

PC  
1111  
.M722  
1920

AN  
ELEMENTARY GRAMMAR  
OF THE  
ITALIAN LANGUAGE  
—  
MARINONI

HAROLD B. LEE  
BRIGHAM YOUNG UNIVERSITY  
PROVO, UTAH

Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2011 with funding from  
Brigham Young University





455  
M339e AN

# ELEMENTARY GRAMMAR OF THE ITALIAN LANGUAGE

BY  
A. MARINONI

PROFESSOR OF ROMANCE LANGUAGES, UNIVERSITY OF ARKANSAS



BRENTANO'S

WASHINGTON

NEW YORK

PARIS

COPYRIGHT, 1920, BY  
BRENTANO'S, INC.

---

*All Rights Reserved*

PRINTED IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

THE LIBRARY  
BRIGHAM YOUNG UNIVERSITY  
PROVO, UTAH

## FOREWORD

It is hoped that in spite of its limitations this book may be of some service to those who undertake the study of Italian either with the guidance of a teacher or by themselves.

The treatment of the subject is by no means exhaustive but an effort has been made to present the elementary rules of the grammar in a systematic and easy way. The practical illustration of such rules by means of examples and exercises is as pertinent as possible and based altogether on the living language.

The material for composition which has been added at the suggestion of teachers and students alike ought to be of some value both as an incentive to further practice in composition and for its content.

The helpful criticism of my friend Professor E. H. Wilkins of the University of Chicago is here gratefully acknowledged.

A. MARINONI.

*Fayetteville, Ark.*



# CONTENTS

LESSON	PAGE
Introductory. Alphabet, Pronunciation, and Accent	vii
I. The Article . . . . .	1
II. Number of Nouns . . . . .	5
III. Use of the Article . . . . .	9
IV. Gender of Nouns . . . . .	12
V. Augmentatives and Diminutives . . . . .	16
VI. Adjectives . . . . .	19
VII. Position of Adjectives . . . . .	23
VIII. Comparison. Comparative . . . . .	26
IX. Superlatives . . . . .	29
X. Numerals. Cardinals . . . . .	33
XI. Numerals. Ordinals . . . . .	37
XII. Pronouns. Subject Pronouns. Object Pronouns .	40
XIII. Disjunctive Object Pronouns . . . . .	45
XIV. Possessives . . . . .	48
XV. Demonstrative Adjectives and Pronouns . . . . .	52
XVI. Relatives . . . . .	55
XVII. Interrogatives . . . . .	59
XVIII. Indefinites . . . . .	62
XIX. The Verb. The Auxiliary "Essere" . . . . .	67
XX. The Auxiliary "Avere" . . . . .	71
XXI. Regular Verbs. First Conjugation . . . . .	74
XXII. Regular Verbs. Second Conjugation . . . . .	77
XXIII. Regular Verbs. Third Conjugation . . . . .	80
XXIV. Reflexive and Impersonal Verbs . . . . .	83
XXV. Irregular Verbs. First Conjugation . . . . .	87
XXVI. Irregular Verbs. First Conjugation ( <i>continued</i> ) . .	91
XXVII. Irregular Verbs. Second Conjugation . . . . .	94

LESSON	PAGE
XXVIII. Irregular Verbs. Second Conjugation ( <i>continued</i> ) .	98
XXIX. Irregular Verbs. Third Conjugation . . . . .	101
XXX. Irregular Verbs. Third Conjugation ( <i>continued</i> ) .	104
XXXI. Interrogative and Negative Sentences . . . . .	107
XXXII. Modes and Tenses. The Indicative . . . . .	110
XXXIII. The Indicative ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	113
XXXIV. The Subjunctive . . . . .	116
XXXV. The Conditional. The Infinitive . . . . .	121
XXXVI. Present Participle. Past Participle . . . . .	124
XXXVII. Adverbs . . . . .	127
XXXVIII. Prepositions . . . . .	131
XXXIX. Conjunctions and Interjections . . . . .	136
Reference List of Irregular Verbs . . . . .	139
Material for Composition . . . . .	155
The Origins of the Italian Language . . . . .	155
Italian-English Vocabulary . . . . .	169
English-Italian Vocabulary . . . . .	179

# INTRODUCTION

## ALPHABET

a. The Italian alphabet contains the same letters as the English, with the exception that **k**, **w**, **x**, and **y** occur only in words of foreign derivation. The letter **j** is rarely used nowadays, **i** being used instead.

## PRONUNCIATION

b. With the exception of e and o, the sound of Italian vowels never changes, and each vowel must be pronounced distinctly.

a, like **a** in father; as, caro, dear.

e, open like **a** in fair; as, terra, earth; or close like **a** in late; as, venti, twenty.

i, like **ee** in feel; as, fila, line.

o, open like **o** in forest; as, rosa, rose; or close like **o** in note; as, ora, hour.

u, like **oo** in pool; as, uva, raisin.

From what precedes it appears that no difficulty is involved in the pronunciation of **a**, **i**, **u**, while the open and close sounds of **e** and **o** may offer some difficulty. *It is indeed only by practise that the student will be enabled to distinguish the open and close sounds of e and o*, and it may be remarked that Italians themselves find it hard in many instances to establish such distinction.

It is hoped, however, that the following remarks will help toward a better understanding of the origin and nature of vowel sounds in Italian.

*tēla* (lat.) *tēla* (it.) *tenet* (lat.) *tiene* (ital.)

viii <sup>v</sup> ELEMENTARY ITALIAN GRAMMAR

*venit* (lat.) *viene* (ital.)

Let us compare, for instance, the Latin words tela and tenet with the corresponding Italian words tela and tiene. The **e** of the Latin tela is preserved in the Italian word with a close sound while the first **e** of tenet gives in Italian the diphthong **ie**. The different treatment that the same Latin vowel receives in Italian is explained by the fact that the **e** of the Latin tela is long (ē) while the first **e** of tenet is short (ĕ). Likewise the long **e** of the Latin words avena, candela, venit (pret. of venire), me, te, etc., gives in Italian a close **e** in the corresponding words avena, candela, venne, me, te, etc.; while the short **e** of the Latin words venit (pres. ind. of venire), dedit, heri, levis, vetus, etc., gives a diphthong in the corresponding Italian words viene, diede, ieri, lieve, vieto, etc.

It might be objected here that the second **e** of tenet is short and yet the Italian form is tiene and not tienie. But the objection falls when we consider that the first **e** of tenet is stressed and the second is not. Further confirmation of the fact that a short Latin **e** not stressed remains unchanged is found in the words lumen, currere, amasset, tacere, which give the Italian lume, correre, amasse, tacere.

Again it may be objected that the **e** of the first syllable of words like fenestra, medulla, is short and not stressed and yet we have in Italian the forms finestra, midolla with **i** instead of **e**. But the reason of it is that the first **e** of fenestra and the **e** of medulla precede the stressed syllable whereas in tenet the second **e** follows it. Likewise from the Latin nepotem and seniorem we have nipote and signore.

The word vetulus, however, with its **e** both short and stressed gives the Italian word vecchio with an open **e** instead of the diphthong **ie**. But it may be remarked that vetulus is a word of classical Latin; in vulgar Latin the word was pronounced vellus and later veclus. The short and stressed **e** of veclus, then, is not in the same condition as the **e** of tenet; in the latter word in fact the **e** is followed by one consonant



only (the syllable is an open one), whereas the **e** of *veclus* is followed by two consonants (the syllable is a closed one). In poetry the **e** of *veclus* would have been considered long but it never lost its natural (short) quantity in pronunciation and gave open **e** in Italian. Whence the law that: short and stressed e in a Latin open syllable gives ie in Italian; short and stressed e in a Latin closed syllable gives open e in Italian.

From what has been said, then, it is evident that the pronunciation of Italian vowel sounds is determined by the nature of the Latin vowel sounds from which they are derived. The quantity, stress, nature of the syllable (open or closed) in which the Latin vowels occur, their position relative to the accent stress in the word, all these have their influence.

## CONSONANTS

c. A discussion of the relations between the Italian and Latin consonants, interesting though it might be from a linguistic standpoint, would be of little direct and practical benefit. Any historical discussion is, therefore, omitted, and the following exposition of the pronunciation of Italian consonant sounds deals merely with peculiarities that may present difficulty. Where the consonants have the same pronunciation in Italian and English no reference is made to them.

c, soft before **e** and **i**, like **ch** in charity; as, cena, supper; cima, top.

g, soft before **e** and **i**, like **j** in just; as, gente, people; giusto, just.

h, is always silent, and is used only to preserve the hard sound of **c** and **g** before **e** and **i**.

r, as in English, except that it is rolled more; as, raro, rare.

s, as in English (seta, silk), except that between two vowels it sounds like z in dozen; as, casa, house.

z, rarely like English z in zone, with a slight sound d heard before the z; as, pranzo, dinner; more often like English ts in fits; as, stanza, room.

cc, before e or i, like tch in match; as accesso, access; accidente, accident.

ch, before e or i, always hard, like k; as, perchè, why; chiave, key.

gg, before e or i, sounds almost like dj in adjust; as, oggetto, object; oggi, to-day.

gh, before e or i, always hard, like g in game; as, mughetto, lily-of-the-valley; ghiaia, gravel.

gl,\* before i, like ll in million; as, figlio, son; except in negligere, to neglect; negligenza, negligence; negligente, negligent (and a few others), in which the gl sounds as in the corresponding English words.

gn, like n in onion; as, campagna, country.

sc, soft before e and i, like sh in she; as, scena, scene; scimmia, monkey.

*cc + o, u, ov = k*

REMARK: Double consonants are pronounced with double emphasis.

## ACCENT AND APOSTROPHE

d. As a general rule the grave accent (̀) is the only one used in Italian. It is placed over the final vowel of some words having the tonic accent on the last syllable; as, virtù, virtue; città, city; avrò, I shall have. It is further used to distinguish certain words of like spelling but of different meaning; as, dì, day, from di, of; è, is,

\* These two consonants are always pronounced separately before a, e, o, u.

from *e*, and; *là*, there, from *la*, the; *dà*, gives, from *da*, from, etc.

REMARK: Except in cases as indicated above, the stress or tonic accent of words must be learned by practise. As a general rule, however, the greater number of Italian words are stressed on the penultimate syllable; fewer on the antepenultimate, and a very small number on the fourth from the last. For the convenience of the student, an acute accent (´) has been used to indicate stress in the conjugation of verbs and in the vocabularies. Such accent, of course, should never be written.

e. In Italian the apostrophe (´) is used to indicate the elision of a vowel (rarely of a syllable); as, *l'argento*, the silver, for *lo argento*; *po'*, little, for *poco*.

### DIVISION OF SYLLABLES

f. A single consonant between two vowels belongs to the following syllable; as, *o-ro*, gold.

g. A group of two (or more) consonants of which the first is *s* belongs to the following syllable; as, *pre-sto*, soon; *co-strin-ge-re*, to compel.

h. Two consonants are separated when they are alike or when the first of such group is *l, m, n, r*; as, *ter-ra*, earth; *al-ta-re*, altar; *em-pi-re*, to fill; *bon-tà*, goodness; *in-ver-no*, winter.

i. Of three consonants, the first belongs to the preceding syllable, provided it is not an *s*; as, *sem-pli-ce*, simple.

j. Vowels forming diphthongs (or triphthongs) are not separated; as, *buo-no*, good; *a-iuo-la*, garden-plot.

*apennino*  
*spire*

## USE OF CAPITALS

*k.* Capital letters are generally used as in English, except:

- (a) With proper adjectives; as, *un libro italiano*, an Italian book.
- (b) With names of months and days; as, *in gennaio*, in January; *lunedì venturo*, next Monday.
- (c) With the pronoun *io*, I.

# LESSON I

## THE ARTICLE

**1.** The English definite article *the* is expressed in Italian as follows:

In the singular by:

**il**, before all masculine nouns beginning with a consonant, except **s** impure, that is, **s** followed by a consonant, and **z**.

Ex.: *il libro*, the book; *il maestro*, the teacher.

**lo**, before **s** impure or **z**.

Ex.: *lo scolaro*, the pupil; *lo zio*, the uncle.

**la**, before feminine nouns beginning with a consonant.

Ex.: *la scuola*, the school; *la veranda*, the veranda; *la promessa*, the promise.

**l'**, before all nouns beginning with a vowel.

Ex.: *l'onore*, the honor; *l'aria sana*, the healthy air.

**2.** In the plural by:

**i**, before masculine nouns beginning with a consonant.

Ex.: *i monti*, the mountains.

**gli**, before masculine nouns beginning with a vowel, **s** impure, or **z**.

Ex.: *gli amici*, the friends; *gli schiavi*, the slaves; *gli zaini*, the knapsacks.

**gl'**, before masculine nouns beginning with **i**, though not necessarily, **gli** usually being employed instead.

Ex.: *gl'inni* or *gli inni*, the hymns.

**le**, before all feminine nouns.

Ex.: *le lettere*, the letters; *le idee*, the ideas; *le lingue moderne*, the modern languages.

**3.** The English indefinite article **a, an**, is rendered by:  
**un**, before masculine nouns beginning with vowel or consonant, except **s** impure and **z**.

Ex.: *un uomo*, a man; *un cuore*, a heart.

**uno**, before masculine nouns beginning with **s** impure or **z**.

Ex.: *uno sbaglio*, a mistake; *uno zelo*, a zeal.

**una**, before feminine nouns beginning with a consonant.

Ex.: *una carrozza*, a carriage.

**un'**, before feminine nouns beginning with a vowel.

Ex.: *un' arancia*, an orange; *un' obbligazione*, an obligation.

NOTE: The student is advised to associate each noun with its article as this is the surest way of learning the gender of Italian nouns.

**4.** The prepositions **di**, of; **a**, to, at; **da**, from, by; **con**, with; **in**, in; **su**, on, upon, are usually contracted with the definite article according to the following table:

#### CONTRACTION OF THE ARTICLE WITH PREPOSITIONS

SINGULAR					PLURAL				
	il	lo	l'	la	i	gli	gl'	le	
<b>di</b>	del	dello	dell'	della	dei	degli	degl'	delle	of the
<b>a</b>	al	allo	all'	alla	ai	agli	agl'	alle	to the
<b>da</b>	dal	dallo	dall'	dalla	dai	dagli	dagl'	dalle	from, by the
<b>con</b>	col	collo	coll'	colla	coi	cogli	cogl'	colle	with the
<b>in</b>	nel	nello	nell'	nella	nei	negli	negl'	nelle	in the
<b>su</b>	sul	sullo	sull'	sulla	sui	sugli	sugl'	sulle	on the

NOTE 1. — These contracted forms are used before nouns according to the rules already given for the simple article.

NOTE 2. — The preposition **per**, for, is rarely contracted (**per + il = pel**, etc.).

5. No contraction takes place before the indefinite article except that the preposition *di* only may drop the *i* before it (*d'un, d'uno, d'una*). The *i* of *di* is usually elided also before all nouns beginning with a vowel.

## EXERCISE I

## VOCABULARY

<i>l'animazióne, f.</i> , the stir, animation.	<i>gránde</i> , great, large.
<i>l'arância, f.</i> , the orange.	<i>ha</i> , has.
<i>l'avventóre, m.</i> , the customer.	<i>la matíta</i> , the pencil.
<i>la bibliotéca</i> , the library.	<i>la mattína</i> , the morning.
<i>il capitáno</i> , the captain.	<i>la pénnna</i> , the pen.
<i>Cárllo</i> , Charles.	<i>la pósta</i> , the post-office.
<i>la cárta</i> , the paper.	<i>il pránzo</i> , the dinner.
<i>la cása</i> , the house.	<i>la proméssa</i> , the promise.
<i>la città</i> , the city.	<i>il regálo</i> , the present.
<i>il commerciánte</i> , the merchant.	<i>lo scrittóio</i> , the desk.
<i>dà</i> , gives.	<i>la séra</i> , the evening.
<i>e</i> , and.	<i>il signóre</i> , the gentleman.
<i>è</i> , is.	<i>la signorína</i> , the young lady.
<i>fácile</i> , easy.	<i>sóno</i> , are.
<i>il fanciúlllo</i> , the boy.	<i>la stráda</i> , the street.
<i>la fontána</i> , the fountain.	<i>lo stúdio</i> , the study.
<i>il giardíno</i> , the garden.	<i>la távola</i> , the table.
<i>Giovánni</i> , John.	<i>útile</i> , useful.

(Also words given in Introduction and rules of pages 1 and 2.)

A. — 1. Il libro e la penna dello scolaro sono sulla tavola. 2. La signorina dà una matita al maestro. 3. La lezione è facile. 4. La carta è sullo scrittoio. 5. La casa del commerciante ha un giardino con una fontana. 6. L'aria dei monti è sana. 7. L'animazione nella strada è grande. 8. Il capitano dà un pranzo agli amici. 9. Carlo è sulla veranda collo zio. 10. La scuola è lontana (far) dalla città.

B. — 1. The letters are at the post-office. 2. The gentleman gives an orange to the boy. 3. The promise of a man of honor is an obligation. 4. The study of modern languages is useful. 5. John is in the library from (the) morning till (to the) evening. 6. The pen and the pencil are on the desk. 7. The merchant gives a present to the customer. 8. The house of the young lady has a large garden with a fountain. 9. The book and the pen of the teacher are on the table. 10. The gentleman gives a dinner to the friends of the captain.



## LESSON II

### NUMBER OF NOUNS

**6.** The plural of nouns is formed according to the following rules:

1. Masculine and feminine nouns ending with **o** or **e**, form their plural in **i**.

Ex.: *il guanto*, the glove; *i guanti*, the gloves; *la madre*, the mother; *le madri*, the mothers.

2. Masculine nouns ending in **a**, form their plural by changing **a** to **i**.

Ex.: *il poeta*, the poet; *i poeti*, the poets.

3. Feminine nouns ending in **a**, change **a** to **e** in the plural.

Ex.: *la riva*, the bank; *le rive*, the banks.

### IRREGULARITIES IN THE FORMATION OF THE PLURAL

**7.** 1. Nouns ending with **i**, **ie**, or with accented **à** or **ù**, and monosyllables remain unchanged.

Ex.: *la crisi*, the crisis; *le crisi*, the crises; *la serie*, the series; *le serie*, the series; *la città*, the city; *le città*, the cities; *la virtù*, the virtue; *le virtù*, the virtues; *il re*, the king; *i re*, the kings.

2. Nouns ending in **ca** and **ga**, insert **h** in the plural. (This is to preserve the hard sound of **c** and **g**.)

Ex.: *la barca*, the boat; *le barche*, the boats; *la bottega*, the shop; *le botteghe*, the shops.

3. Nouns ending in **co** and **go**, generally form their plural in **chi** and **ghi** respectively.

Ex.: *il banco*, the bench; *i banchi*, the benches; *il lago*, the lake; *i laghi*, the lakes.

NOTE: This rule suffers some exceptions: *l'amico*, the friend; *gli amici*, the friends; *il nemico*, the enemy; *i nemici*, the enemies, and a few others.

4. A few nouns ending in **co**, may admit both **ci** and **chi**, though **ci** is perhaps the more usual form.

Ex.: *il monaco*, the monk; *i monaci* or *monachi*, the monks; *l'Austriaco*, the Austrian; *gli Austriaci* or *Austriachi*, the Austrians,

5. Nouns ending in **io** with stress on **i**, change **o** to **i** in the plural.

Ex.: *il mormorio*, the murmur; *i mormori*, the murmurs.

Otherwise the **o** is dropped, unless **ii** is necessary to avoid ambiguity.

Ex.: *il figlio*, the son; *i figli*, the sons; *il ciliegio*, the cherry-tree; *i ciliegi*, the cherry-trees.

But: *il principio*, the principle; *i principii*, the principles (to distinguish it from *principi*, the princes. This rule, however, is not strictly observed, as ambiguity rarely arises from any connected passage).

6. The following words change final **o** to **a** in the plural and also change their gender:

*il moggio*, the bushel, **le moggia**; **un paio**, a pair, couple, **le paia**; **un uovo**, an egg, **le uova**; *il miglio*, the mile, **le miglia**; **un centinaio** (about) a hundred, **le centinaia**; **un migliaio** (about) a thousand, **le migliaia**.

7. The following nouns have anomalous plurals:

*l'uomo*, the man; *gli uomini*, the men; *il dio*, the god;  
*gli dei*, the gods; *il bue*, the ox; *i buoi*, the oxen.

## EXERCISE II

### VOCABULARY

le <i>Álpi</i> , the Alps.	<i>Itália</i> , <i>f.</i> , Italy.
<i>l'Árabo</i> , <i>m.</i> , the Arab.	<i>Lombardia</i> , <i>f.</i> , Lombardy.
<i>l'Árno</i> , <i>m.</i> , the Arno.	<i>Miláno</i> , <i>f.</i> , Milan.
<i>centrále</i> , central.	<i>Nápoli</i> , <i>f.</i> , Naples.
<i>la colazióne</i> , the breakfast.	<i>la persóna</i> , the person.
<i>commercialménte</i> , commercially.	<i>il pópolo</i> , the people.
<i>cómodi</i> , <i>adj. pl. of cómodo</i> , comfortable.	<i>la regáta</i> , the boat race.
<i>la córsa</i> , the race.	<i>il salóttó</i> , the parlor.
<i>la dispénsa</i> , the pantry.	<i>sério</i> , serious.
<i>dúe</i> , two.	<i>soltánto</i> , only.
<i>già</i> , already.	<i>il Tamígi</i> , the Thames.
<i>ho</i> , I have.	<i>il Tedésco</i> , the German.
<i>háanno</i> , they have.	<i>il Tévere</i> , the Tiber.
<i>importánti</i> , <i>adj. pl. of importánte</i> , important.	<i>Toríno</i> , <i>f.</i> , Turin.
<i>incantévoli</i> , <i>adj. pl. of incantévole</i> , enchanting.	<i>l'università</i> , <i>f.</i> , the university.
<i>industrióso</i> , industrious.	<i>velóci</i> , <i>adj. pl. of velóce</i> , fast.
	<i>Venézia</i> , <i>f.</i> , Venice.
	<i>vídero</i> , (they) saw.

(Also words given in preceding lesson.)

1. Put the definite article before the following words and then form the plural of both article and noun; as, *il cavállo*, *i cavállì*.

*cavállo*, horse; *stálla*, *f.*, stable; *fiúme*, *m.*, river;  
*sédia*, *f.*, chair; *fióre*, *m.*, flower; *pésco*, *m.*, peach-tree; *bóscó*, *m.*, wood.

A. — 1. I cavalli degli Arabi sono veloci. 2. Le sedie e i banchi della scuola sono comodi. 3. I buoi sono nella

stalla. 4. I laghi e i boschi delle Alpi sono incantevoli. 5. Milano e Brescia sono città della Lombardia. 6. Ho due paia di guanti. 7. La corsa è di due miglia. 8. Le uova sono nella dispensa. 9. Il Tevere e l'Arno sono fiumi dell'Italia centrale. 10. I peschi hanno già i fiori.

B. — 1. The boats are on the bank of the river. 2. The friends of the young lady are in the parlor. 3. Venice and Naples are two enchanting cities. 4. I have a pair of fast<sup>2</sup> horses<sup>1</sup>.\* 5. The Germans are a serious<sup>2</sup> and industrious<sup>3</sup> people<sup>1</sup>. 6. Milan and Turin are important<sup>2</sup> cities<sup>1</sup> commercially. 7. Thousands of persons saw the boat races on the Thames. 8. The university is (insert 'to') two miles from the city. 9. The cherry-trees are already in flower. 10. For breakfast I have only a couple of eggs.

\* Small numbers are used throughout the book to indicate the respective order of the words in the sentence.

## LESSON III

### USE OF THE ARTICLE

8. The definite article is used in Italian and not in English:

1. Before nouns taken in a general sense.

Ex.: *l'oro è un metallo prezioso*, gold is a precious metal; *il ferro è utile*, iron is useful.

2. Before abstract nouns.

Ex.: *la libertà è cara*, liberty is dear; *il vizio è odioso*, vice is odious.

3. Before names of countries.

Ex.: *l'Italia*, Italy; *la Francia*, France; *dagli Stati Uniti*, from the United States.

In the genitive case, however, the article may be omitted if the name of a country is used instead of an adjective.

Ex.: *il vino di Francia* (i.e., *francese*, French), the French wine (*lit.* of France).

Yet the article is used also in the genitive case, provided the name is modified by an adjective.

Ex.: *le speranze della nuova Italia*, the hopes of new Italy.

NOTE: The article is usually omitted after the preposition *in*.

4. Before family names,\* titles, professions, except in direct address.

Ex.: *il Petrarca*, Petrarch; *il Carducci*, Carducci; *il re Vittorio Emanuele III (terzo)*, King Victor Emmanuel III; *il signor Bianchi*, Mr. Bianchi.

\* In many instances, however, the use of the article is optional; sometimes the article is omitted altogether.

NOTE 1. — The definite article is usually repeated before each noun.

Ex.: *il fratello e la sorella*, the brother and sister.

NOTE 2. — The definite article replaces the English indefinite article before nouns of weight, measure, number, and time.

Ex.: *cinque soldi la libbra*, five cents a pound; *due lire il metro*, two francs a meter; *venti soldi la dozzina*, twenty cents a dozen; *dieci dollari il giorno*, ten dollars a day.

5. The genitive articles **del**, **dello**, **della**, and **dei**, **degli**, **delle**, are often used in a partitive sense to render the English words *some*, *any*, *a few*.

Ex.: *avete dei libri?* Have you *any* books?

9. The indefinite article in Italian is generally omitted:

1. Before nouns denoting profession, rank, title, nationality.

Ex.: *il signor Martini è avvocato*, Mr. Martini is a lawyer; *il signor Black è capitano*, Mr. Black is a captain; *(egli) è Americano*, he is an American.

NOTE: The indefinite article, however, is used in Italian when such nouns indicating profession, etc., are modified by an adjective or followed by a relative pronoun.

Ex.: *il signor Martini è un avvocato famoso*, Mr. Martini is a famous lawyer; *(egli) è un Americano che parla bene italiano*, he is an American who speaks Italian well.

2. Before nouns used in apposition.

Ex.: *Sant'Elena, piccola isola nell'Atlantico, è famosa nella storia*, St. Helena, a small island in the Atlantic, is famous in history.

## EXERCISE III

## VOCABULARY

arriváto, arrived; è —, has arrived.	la letteratúra, the literature.
la ciliégia, the cherry.	ma, but.
cóme, as, like.	il meccánico, the mechanic.
così, so.	mío, my.
conósce, knows.	non, not.
cóstano, cost.	óggi, to-day.
dappertútto, everywhere.	la péscà, the peach.
Európa, <i>f.</i> , Europe.	prosperóso, prosperous.
il giornále, the newspaper.	rinomáti, <i>adj. pl. of</i> rinomáto,
guadágna, earns.	famous.
l'influénza, <i>f.</i> , the influence.	la riputazióne, the reputation.
Inghiltérà, <i>f.</i> , England.	la rivísta, the review.
Inglése, English.	settentrionále, northern.
innáto, innate.	la véndita, the sale.

(Also words given in preceding lessons.)

A. — 1. L'oro è un metallo prezioso, ma non così utile come il ferro. 2. L'amore della libertà è innato nell'uomo. 3. Il signor Lupi è arrivato oggi dall'Italia. 4. I vini di Francia sono rinomati. 5. I giornali e le riviste d'Italia e d'Inghilterra sono in vendita oggi. 6. Le uova costano venti soldi la dozzina. 7. Il meccanico guadagna cinque dollari il giorno. 8. Lo zio di Carlo è avvocato. 9. Mio fratello è un commerciante prosperoso. 10. L'influenza del Petrarca sulle letterature d'Europa è grande.

B. — 1. Mr. White is an Englishman who knows Italy<sup>2</sup> well<sup>1</sup>. 2. Mr. Adams is a lawyer who has some reputation in the (omit) city. 3. Peaches cost ten cents a dozen. 4. Liberty is dear to man. 5. My uncle earns five dollars a day. 6. Europe is<sup>2</sup> not<sup>1</sup> so prosperous commercially as America. 7. He has some Italian<sup>2</sup> and French<sup>3</sup> reviews<sup>1</sup> in the library. 8. The wines of northern<sup>2</sup> Italy<sup>1</sup> are famous everywhere. 9. The influence of Byron and Shelley on the literatures of Europe is great. 10. Have you any (§ 8, 5) cherries?

## LESSON IV

### GENDER OF NOUNS

**10.** Italian nouns have no case forms, and the English possessive case is expressed by means of the preposition **di**.

Ex.: *il libro di mio fratello*, my brother's book.

**11.** There are only two genders in Italian, *masculine* and *feminine*. As a general rule, nouns denoting males, titles, and professions pertaining to males are masculine, whatever their endings; those denoting females, titles, and professions pertaining to females are feminine. Exceptions to this rule are: *la guida*, the guide; *la persona*, the person; *la sentinella*, the sentry.

**12.** The following rules may help in determining the gender of nouns:

1. Nouns ending in **o** are usually masculine.

Ex.: *il giorno*, the day; *l'oro*, the gold.

Except: *la mano*, the hand; *l'eco* (*la eco*), the echo.

(*Eco* may also be masculine in the singular. It is masculine in the plural.)

**13.** Nouns ending in **a** are usually feminine.

Ex.: *la paura*, the fear; *la casa*, the house.

Except: *il poeta*, the poet; *il poema*, the poem; *il clima*, the climate; *il sistema*, the system; *il dramma*, the drama; *il pianeta*, the planet.

**14.** Nouns ending in **e** or **i** can hardly be classified as to



gender; the following rules, however, will be of some assistance:

1. Nouns ending in **údine** and **zione** are feminine.

Ex.: *la moltitudine*, the multitude; *la nazione*, the nation.

2. Nouns ending in **i** are feminine when derived from the Greek, otherwise they are masculine.

Ex.: *la tesi*, the thesis; *la genesi*, the genesis.

But: *il brindisi*, the toast; *il dì*, the day, and its compounds *mezzodì*, midday; *lunedì*, Monday; *martedì*, Tuesday; *mercoledì*, Wednesday; *giovedì*, Thursday; *venerdì*, Friday.

3. Nouns ending in **ù** are usually feminine when meaning abstract ideas and masculine when meaning concrete objects.

Ex.: *la virtù*, the virtue; *la gioventù*, the youth.

But: *il Perù*, Peru; *il bambù*, the bamboo.

REMARK: The difficulty involved in determining the gender of nouns can only be overcome by a long practise.

### FORMATION OF THE FEMININE IN NOUNS

**15.** The feminine of nouns representing living beings is often formed by changing the termination of the masculine.

1. Nouns ending in **o** change **o** to **a**.

Ex.: *lo zio*, the uncle; *la zia*, the aunt; *il ragazzo*, the boy; *la ragazza*, the girl.

Except: *fratello*, brother; *sorella*, sister; *dio*, god; *dea*, goddess.

2. Nouns ending in **a** change **a** to **essa**.

Ex.: *il poeta*, the poet; *la poetessa*, the poetess; *il duca*, the duke; *la duchessa*, the duchess.

Except: *artista*, artist; *violinista*, violinist; *corista*,

chorister, and others of similar ending which remain invariable.

3. Nouns in **e** usually have the feminine in **a**.

Ex.: *il padrone*, the master; *la padrona*, the mistress; *il signore*, the gentleman, Mr.; *la signora*, the lady, Mrs.

Except: *padre*, father; *madre*, mother; *barone*, baron; *baronessa*, baroness; *conte*, count; *contessa*, countess; *leone*, lion; *leonessa*, lioness; and the invariable *cantante*, singer; *nipote*, nephew, niece; *erede*, heir.

4. Nouns ending in **tore** have the feminine in **trice**.

Ex.: *il pittore*, the painter, *la pittrice*; *lo scrittore*, the writer, *la scrittrice*.

Except: *il dottore*, the doctor, *la dottoressa*.\*

5. As regards inanimate objects, nouns ending in **o** that are names of trees, change **o** to **a** and become feminine to indicate the fruit.

Ex.: *il pero*, the pear-tree; *la pera*, the pear; *il pesco*, the peach-tree; *la pesca*, the peach.

Except: *il fico*, the fig-tree or fig (fruit); *il pomo*, the apple-tree or apple (fruit)†; *il dattero*, the date-tree or date (fruit); *il cedro*, the cedar-tree or cedar (fruit).

## EXERCISE IV

### VOCABULARY

<b>abbondánti</b> , <i>adj. pl. of abbon-</i>	<b>che</b> , which.
<b>dánte</b> , abundant.	<b>chiamáto</b> , called.
<b>ángolo</b> , corner.	<b>conquistáto</b> , conquered.
<b>cáldi</b> , <i>adj. pl. of caldo</i> , warm.	<b>créscono</b> , (they) grow.

\* As a title, **dottore** may be used in the feminine also; **dottoressa** is often said of a woman who makes vain pretensions to knowledge.

† **Melo** (*m.*) is also another word for apple-tree, and **mela** (*f.*) for apple (fruit).

decimále, decimal.  
 divíno, divine.  
 eccellénza, per —, par excellence.  
 effétto, effect.  
 Firénze, f.. Florence.  
 fu, was.  
 generalménte, generally.  
 gentíle, gentle, kind.  
 grammática, grammar.  
 ingégno, talent.  
 inventáto, invented.  
 macelláio, butcher.  
 míte, mild.  
 mólto, very.

piánta, tree.  
 popolári, *adj. pl. of* popoláre,  
 popular.  
 Rinasciménto, Renaissance.  
 Róma, Rome.  
 sicúra, *adj. fem. sing. of* sicúro,  
 reliable.  
 telégrafo, telegraph.  
 talvólta, sometimes.  
 térra, earth.  
 terribili, *adj. pl. of* terribile,  
 terrible.  
 váne, *adj. fem. pl. of* váno, vain.

(Also words given in preceding lessons.)

A. — 1. La bottega del macellaio è all'angolo della strada. 2. La dottoressa Tagliaferro è una signora molto gentile. 3. La grammatica è una guida molto utile nello studio delle lingue. 4. Gli effetti delle vane paure sono talvolta terribili. 5. Il sistema decimale fu inventato dagli Arabi. 6. La signorina è una nipote della padrona di casa. 7. Firenze fu la città per eccellenza dei poeti e degli artisti del Rinascimento. 8. Le mele e le pesche sono abbondanti, ma non i fichi. 9. La Duse è una grande attrice. 10. Il dattero e il cedro sono piante che crescono nei climi caldi.

B. — 1. Peru was conquered by Pizarro.\* 2. Shakespeare's dramas are popular in Italy. 3. Mrs. White is very kind to (*verso di*) me (*me*). 4. The climate of Italy is generally mild. 5. The wireless (*senza fili*)<sup>2</sup> telegraph<sup>1</sup> was invented by Marconi. 6. The guide is a reliable person<sup>1</sup>. 7. The earth is a planet of the solar<sup>2</sup> system<sup>1</sup>. 8. Mrs. Grazia Deledda is a writer of great talent. 9. Dante is sometimes called "the divine poet." 10. Mr. Wolf's sister is a doctor of the university of Rome.

\* Omit the article before this name.

## LESSON V

### AUGMENTATIVES AND DIMINUTIVES

**16.** The original meaning of many Italian nouns and adjectives, and sometimes also of verbs and adverbs, may be modified by means of suffixes. These are called *augmentatives* when they imply augmentation, *diminutives* when they imply diminution.

**17.** Of augmentative suffixes the most important are **-one** and **-otto**. Of these, **-one**, always masculine (with a rare feminine in **-ona**), usually refers to size.

Ex.: *il libro*, the book; *il librone*, the large book; *la tavola*, the table; *il tavolone*, the big table.

The suffix **-otto** (feminine **-otta**) usually indicates strength.

Ex.: *contadino*, peasant; *contadinotto*, peasant of fine build; *vecchio*, old man; *vecchiotto*, old man of fine appearance; *aquila*, eagle; *aquilotto*, eaglet.

**18.** The principal diminutive suffixes are: **-ino**, **-etto**, **-cello**, **-cino**, **-icino**. Of these suffixes with feminine forms in **-ina**, **-etta**, etc., **-ino** indicates both smallness and prettiness and oftentimes endearment, the others generally refer to size only.

Ex.: *viso*, face; *visino*, pretty little face; *mano*, hand; *manina*, pretty little hand; *povero*, poor fellow; *poverino*, poor little one; *casa*, house; *casetta*, little house; *carro*, wagon; *carretto*, small wagon; *lago*, lake; *laghetto*, small lake; *fiume*, river; *fiumicello*,

small river; *tavola*, f., table; *tavolino*, m., small table; *bastone*, cane; *bastoncino*, little cane; *lupo*, wolf; *lupicino*, little wolf.

**19.** The diminutive suffixes **-erello**, **-uccio**, **-ello** with feminine forms **-erella**, etc., are generally used to express either affection or contempt.

Ex.: *vecchio*, old man; *vecchierello*, poor old man; *Carlo*, Charles; *Carluccio*, (dear) little Charles; *casa*, house; *casuccia*, hovel; *cappello*, hat; *cappelluccio*, worn out and cheap hat; *scrittore*, writer; *scrittorello*, bad writer.

**20.** The suffixes **-accio**, **-astro**, and sometimes **-icciuolo**, with others of less importance, generally convey an idea of badness, contempt, weakness, and the like; hence they are called in Italian *peggiorativi* (depreciatives).

Ex.: *uomo*, man; *omaccio*, wicked man; *poeta*, poet; *poetastro*, poetaster; *corpo*, body; *corpicciuolo*, little sickly body; *muro*, wall; *muricciuolo*, little wall.

NOTE: It will be noticed that all words drop the final vowel before taking suffixes.

REMARK: In general it is rather hard to determine what diminutive or augmentative suffixes a noun may take. Usage is apparently the best rule to go by.

## EXERCISE V

### VOCABULARY

**allégro**, cheerful.

**apérto**, open.

**bellína**, *adj. fem. dim. of bello*, pretty.

**cínta**, *di* —, surrounding.

**delicáto**, delicate.

**diligénte**, diligent.

**dórme**, sleeps.

**édera**, ivy.

**elegánte**, elegant.

**érba**, grass; **erbétta**, soft grass.

**fréscó**, fresh

**gelsomíno**, jasmine.

**létto**, bed.

**margheríta**, daisy.

**nónno**, grandfather.

**nótte**, *f.*, night.

**ombrellíno**, parasol, *dim. of om-*

**bréllò**, umbrella.

**págliá**, straw.

**práto**, meadow.

**ricopérto**, covered.

**rósa**, rose.

**Rubicóne**, *m.*, Rubicon.

**sémpre**, always.

**sfortunáto**, unfortunate.

**stória**, history.

**vílla**, country house, villa.

(Also words given in preceding lessons.)

A. -- 1. Il portone del palazzo è aperto giorno e notte. 2. Mio nonno è un vecchiotto allegro. 3. Il fanciullino del signor Neri ha un visino fresco come una rosa. 4. Carluccio è un ragazzino diligente. 5. Il signor Roberts ha una villetta molto bellina a Firenze. 6. La margheritina è un fiorellino di prato. 7. Il giardinetto della casa di mio padre ha un muricciuolo di cinta. 8. Il poverino dorme in un lettuccio di paglia. 9. Il praticello è ricoperto d'erbetta. 10. L'ombrellino della signorina è molto elegante.

B. — 1. The little wall of the garden is covered with (*di*) ivy. 2. The poor old man is very unfortunate. 3. Little Charles is always cheerful. 4. The Rubicon is an important<sup>2</sup> little river<sup>1</sup> in the history of Rome. 5. The poor little one lives in a hovel on the banks of the small lake. 6. My uncle's little house is very pretty and elegant. 7. John's little sister has a white<sup>2</sup> parasol<sup>1</sup>. 8. The large book is on the little table of the library. 9. The jasmine is a delicate<sup>2</sup> little flower<sup>1</sup>. 10. He has a very<sup>2</sup> elegant<sup>2</sup> little cane<sup>1</sup>.

## LESSON VI

### ADJECTIVES

**21.** Adjectives in Italian agree in gender and number with the noun they qualify. An adjective qualifying two or more nouns of different gender representing living beings is masculine plural, unless such nouns are all feminine.

Ex.: *un uomo sincero*, a sincere man; *una bella signora*, a beautiful lady; *il fratello e la sorella sono buoni*, the brother and sister are good.

**22.** An adjective qualifying two or more nouns of different gender representing inanimate objects may be in the plural masculine or made to agree in gender and number with its nearest noun.

Ex.: *il calamaio e la penna sono nuovi* or *è nuova*, the inkstand and the pen are new.

**23.** Adjectives ending in **e** are both masculine and feminine in the singular.

Ex.: *lo smeraldo è verde*, the emerald is green; *l'edera, f., è verde*, the ivy is green.

**24.** Adjectives ending in **o**, change **o** to **a** in the feminine.

Ex.: *un lavoro prezioso*, a precious work; *una moneta preziosa*, a precious coin.

**25.** The plural of adjectives is formed like that of nouns of similar endings.

## APOCOPATION OF ADJECTIVES

**26.** The adjective **bello** is shortened to **bel** when it precedes a masculine noun beginning with a consonant (except **s** impure).

Ex.: *un bel quadro*, a beautiful picture.

But: *un bello sguardo*, a beautiful look.

**Bello** drops the final **o** and takes an apostrophe **bell'** before a vowel.

Ex.: *un bell' argomento*, a fine argument.

NOTE: The plural of **bello** and **bell'** is **begli**; that of **bel** is **bei**.

**27.** The adjectives **grande** and **Santo** are shortened to **gran** and **San\*** before a noun beginning with a consonant (except **s** impure).

Ex.: *il gran palazzo*, the great palace.

But: *il grande sgomento*, the great alarm; *San Tommaso*, St. Thomas.

But: *Santo Stefano*, St. Stephen.

Either **grande** or **grand'** may be used before a noun beginning with a vowel; *Santo* is always shortened to *Sant'* before a vowel.

Ex.: *un grande* or *grand'animo*, a great spirit; *Sant'Agostino*, St. Augustine.

NOTE: In the plural the form **gran** is often used instead of **grandi**.

Ex.: *gran monumenti*, great monuments; *gran ricchezze*, great riches.

\* Whereas **gran** can be used both with masculine and feminine nouns, **San** precedes only masculine nouns beginning with a consonant. Before feminine nouns beginning with a consonant **Santa** is used.

Ex.: *Santa Caterina*, St. Catherine.



**28.** The adjective **buono** drops the final **o** before a masculine noun beginning with a consonant or vowel (except **s** impure, though not consistently).

Ex.: *un buon cantante*, a good singer; *un buon amico*, a good friend.

NOTE: The form **buon'** may be used instead of **buona** before feminine nouns beginning with a vowel.

Ex.: *buon' anima*, good soul.

**29.** The student will easily notice that, except in the case of **s** impure, the tendency with adjectives is to drop the final vowel.\* This is largely in order to avoid a monotonous recurrence of vowel sounds.

## EXERCISE VI

### VOCABULARY

**accettáto**, accepted.

**áureo**, golden.

**baúle**, *m.*, trunk.

**cápo**, head, leader.

**chiésa**, church.

**commerciále**, commercial.

**consíglío**, counsel, advice.

**dománda**, demand, request.

**estrémo**, extreme.

**faticóso**, hard.

**filósofo**, philosopher.

**giornáta**, day.

**iéri**, yesterday.

**imménso**, immense.

**imposizióne**, *f.*, imposition.

**lúngo**, long.

**mále**, *m.*, evil, disease.

**metállo**, metal.

**modérno**, modern.

**naturále**, natural.

**paése**, *m.*, country.

**período**, period.

**piacévole**, pleasing.

**piuttósto**, rather.

**plátino**, platinum.

**principále**, main.

**quésto**, this.

**ragguardévole**, remarkable.

**rimédio**, remedy.

**risórsa**, resource.

**scioperánte**, *m.*, striker.

**scolástica**, scholastic philosophy.

**stésso**, same.

**svilúppo**, development.

**témpo**, time.

**utilità**, usefulness.

**valígia**, valise.

**viággio**, trip.

**vói**, you.

(Also words given in preceding lessons.)

\* Such vowel may fall when preceded by **l**, **m**, **n**, **r**. If the group **ll** precedes, one of the two consonants also falls (§ 26); except **giallo**, yellow, which is never abbreviated.

A. — 1. La strada è lunga e faticosa. 2. Le risorse naturali degli Stati Uniti sono immense. 3. Lo sviluppo commerciale dell' Italia moderna è ragguardevole. 4. La valigia e il baule sono arrivati oggi. 5. A mali estremi estremi rimedi. 6. Questo non è un bell' argomento. 7. Oggi è una bella giornata. 8. Questo è un buon consiglio, e di grande utilità per voi. 9. San Tommaso è uno dei grandi filosofi del periodo aureo della scolastica. 10. La domanda degli scioperanti è un' imposizione bella e buona (idiomatic: the two adjectives here emphasize the statement made. Translate by an adverb — certainly, surely, etc.).

B. — 1. The trip is long and hard but pleasing at the same time. 2. This is a fine argument, but the strikers have not\* accepted the counsel of the leaders. 3. St. Augustine is one of the great philosophers of the Church. 4. The commercial<sup>2</sup> development<sup>1</sup> of the United States is the natural<sup>2</sup> effect<sup>1</sup> of the immense resources of the country. 5. Yesterday was a fine day. 6. Gold and platinum are very<sup>2</sup> precious<sup>3</sup> metals<sup>1</sup>. 7. This remedy is very good for you. 8. This trunk is rather large. 9. They (*essi*) have a great palace in the main street of the city. 10. This man is sincere.

\* The negative **non** is always placed before the verb; in compounds it precedes the auxiliary.

## LESSON VII

### POSITION OF ADJECTIVES

**30.** Adjectives usually follow their nouns when denoting an occasional *shape, color, taste, or a physical quality*.

Ex.: *una tavola rotonda*, a round table; *il cavallo bianco*, the white horse; *il caffè è amaro*, the coffee is bitter; *l'uomo cieco*, the blind man; *l'acqua fredda*, the cold water.

**31.** Likewise, adjectives indicating *nationality, religion, or office* follow their nouns.

Ex.: *la lingua italiana*, the Italian language; *l'Italia è un paese cattolico*, Italy is a catholic country; *un ordine imperiale*, an imperial order.

**32.** Adjectives of participial derivation are also placed after their nouns.

Ex.: *uno scolaro intelligente*, an intelligent pupil; *l'amico ingannato*, the deceived friend.

**33.** A short noun or adjective usually precedes a longer adjective or noun.

Ex.: *un orrore indescrivibile*, an indescribable horror; *un bel paesaggio*, a beautiful landscape.

**34.** Adjectives expressing *quantity or size, numeral adjectives, and others denoting beauty, ugliness, goodness, badness*, generally precede their nouns, unless a different order is preferable for emphasis.

Ex.: *molti soldati*, many soldiers; *un piccolo esercito*, a small army; *tre cani*, three dogs; *un bel parco*, a beautiful park; *un cattivo ragazzo*, a bad boy; *è un' azione cattiva* (emphatic), it is a bad action.

**35.** Augmentative and diminutive adjectives always follow their nouns.

Ex.: *una casetta bellina*, a pretty little house.

NOTE: The foregoing rules on the position of adjectives are not always binding. As a matter of fact, the position of adjectives (especially in poetry) is largely left to the discretion of the writer who places them according to his idea of effect, harmony, taste, etc.

## EXERCISE VII

### VOCABULARY

alpíno, Alpine.	número, number.
armoniôso, harmonious.	ôffrono, (they) offer.
Boéro, Boer.	pígro, lazy.
campâgna, country (fields).	poténte, powerful.
carrózza, carriage.	puníto, punished.
causò, caused.	púro ( <i>lit.</i> pure), sheer.
civiltà, civilization.	questióne, <i>f.</i> , question.
competénte, competent.	rícco, rich.
cristiáno, Christian.	rotóndo, round.
dirítto, law.	sacrificio, sacrifice.
equatoriále, equatorial.	salvò, saved.
eróe, hero.	spettácolo, spectacle.
flóttá, fleet.	suóno, sound.
fórza, force.	tesóro, treasure.
francése, French.	tiráto, drawn.
gióvane, <i>adj.</i> , young; <i>noun</i> , young man.	valoróso, brave.
insalúbre, unhealthy.	véro, true.
invasióne, <i>f.</i> , invasion.	vínto, overcome.
meraviglióso, wonderful.	víta, life.

(Also words given in preceding lessons.)

A. — 1. Il re Arturo è l'eroe dei poemi della Tavola rotonda. 2. L'esercito dei Boeri era piccolo ma valoroso. 3. Il signor Adams è una persona competente in questioni di diritto commerciale. 4. Il clima caldo di molti paesi equatoriali è insalubre. 5. La gran vittoria di Carlo Martello (Charles Martel) sopra gli Arabi, salvò la civiltà cristiana. 6. La lingua italiana è molto ricca di suoni armoniosi. 7. L'amico è arrivato oggi dalla campagna su una piccola carrozza tirata da due bei cavalli bianchi. 8. I paesaggi alpini offrono degli spettacoli meravigliosi. 9. Carlo è un giovane intelligente ma pigro. 10. Un vero amico è un tesoro.

B. — 1. The American fleet is very powerful. 2. The little round table of the library is beautiful. 3. The Alps offer some wonderful landscapes. 4. With the sacrifice of his (*la*) life, Pietro Micca saved Turin from a French invasion. 5. The bad boy was punished. 6. The small army of the Boers was overcome by sheer force of numbers (*sing.*). 7. The disaster caused an indescribable horror. 8. This coffee is very bitter. 9. I have two white horses and a fine carriage. 10. The cold climate of this northern country is not good for you.

## LESSON VIII

### COMPARISON

**36.** The various degrees of comparison are generally expressed in Italian by means of adverbs, not by changing the termination of adjectives.

#### COMPARATIVE

**37.** The comparative of superiority and inferiority are formed respectively by placing **più**, more, and **meno**, less, before the adjective.

Ex.: *importante*, important; *più importante*, more important; *artistico*, artistic; *meno artistico*, less artistic.

**38.** A few adjectives have, besides a regular comparative, an irregular one of Latin derivation as follows:

*alto*, high; *più alto* or *superiore* (followed by **a**), higher; *grande*, great; *più grande* or *maggiore*, greater (older, elder); *piccolo*, small; *più piccolo* or *minore*, smaller, (younger, minor); *buono*, good; *più buono* or *migliore*, better; *cattivo*, bad; *più cattivo* or *peggiore*, worse; *basso*, low; *più basso* or *inferiore* (followed by **a**), lower.

**39.** The forms **maggiore**, **minore**, **superiore**, **inferiore** are not used to denote height or size except in mathematical language or in the case of abstract ideas. Hence:

*una casa più piccola* (not *minore*), a small house.

But: *un numero più grande* or *maggiore*, a larger number.

NOTE: The English adverbs *better* and *worse* are rendered in Italian by *meglio* and *peggio* respectively.

40. The word *than* is rendered as follows:

1. By **che**, when the second member of the comparison is either an *adjective*, a verb in the *infinitive*, or an *adverb*.

Ex.: *il ferro è più utile che prezioso*, iron is more useful than precious; *è meglio morire che vivere disonorati*, it is better to die than to live in dishonor; *meglio così che peggio*, better thus than worse (i.e., it might be worse).

2. By **di** before a *numerical expression*, a *pronoun*, or a *noun*.

Ex.: *studio più di cinque ore il giorno*, I study more than five hours a day; *le signorine sono più diligenti di noi*, the young ladies are more diligent than we; *il leone è più forte della (di + la) tigre*, the lion is stronger than the tiger.

41. The comparative of equality is usually expressed with the correlative forms **tanto . . . quanto** or **così . . . come**.

Ex.: <i>l'italiano non è tanto difficile quanto il tedesco</i>	} Italian is not as hard as German
Or: <i>l'italiano non è così difficile come il tedesco</i>	

NOTE 1. — In the foregoing examples both **tanto** and **così** may be omitted.

NOTE 2. — **Tanto** and **quanto**, when used for *quantity*, agree in gender and number with the noun.

Ex.: *non ha tanta esperienza quanta ne ho io*, he has not as much experience as I (*lit.* as I have of it).

## EXERCISE VIII

## VOCABULARY

<b>ábita</b> , lives.	<b>partíre</b> , (to) depart, leave.
<b>Americáno</b> , American.	<b>piáno</b> , floor.
<b>attívo</b> , active.	<b>possíbile</b> , possible.
<b>céntro</b> , center.	<b>présente</b> , present.
<b>corággio</b> , courage.	<b>présto</b> , soon.
<b>créde</b> , egli —, he thinks ( <i>lit.</i> believes).	<b>prézzo</b> , price.
<b>dománi</b> , to-morrow.	<b>salário</b> , salary.
<b>Européo</b> , European.	<b>sciópero</b> , strike.
<b>ferroviário</b> , railroad ( <i>adj.</i> )	<b>sénza</b> , without.
<b>importánza</b> , importance.	<b>servízio</b> , service.
<b>mái</b> , never.	<b>sfórzo</b> , effort.
<b>me</b> , me (I).	<b>sodisfacénte</b> , satisfactory.
<b>Parígi</b> , Paris.	<b>studióso</b> , studious.
	<b>tárdi</b> , late.

(Also words given in preceding lessons.)

A. — 1. Parigi è un centro artistico più importante di New-York. 2. Il signore ha più esperienza di noi. 3. Carlo è più studioso di me, ma non ha tanti libri quanti ne ho io. 4. È meglio partire più presto. 5. Un maggiore sforzo non è possibile. 6. Lo studio della grammatica è più utile che piacevole. 7. Il figlio maggiore del signor Lombardi è a Boston. 8. (È) meglio tardi che mai. 9. Il servizio ferroviario in Italia non è così soddisfacente come negli Stati Uniti. 10. In questo sciopero la questione dei salari è di minor importanza.

B. — 1. I study more than five hours a day without effort. 2. New York is commercially a more important city than Paris. 3. The remedy is worse than the disease. 4. It (omit) is better to leave to-day than to-morrow. 5. The price is not so high as he thinks. 6. My brother has a better opinion of you. 7. Americans are generally more active than Europeans. 8. My (*mia*) sister is older than I. 9. I have not as much courage as Charles. 10. Mr. Brown lives on (omit) the (*al*) lower<sup>2</sup> floor<sup>1</sup>.



## LESSON IX

### SUPERLATIVES

**42.** The superlative may be relative or absolute. It is relative when expressing the highest or lowest degree of a quality in comparison with another either implied or expressed. It is absolute when no comparison exists and the quality is not the highest or lowest but only very high or very low.

#### RELATIVE SUPERLATIVE

**43.** The relative superlative is formed by means of the comparative preceded by the definite article.

Ex.: *Dante è il più grande poeta italiano*, Dante is the greatest Italian poet.

NOTE: When the relative superlative follows its noun, the definite article is not used.

Ex.: *il miglior sistema* } the best system.  
*il sistema migliore* }

**44.** The English prepositions *of*, *in*, are usually rendered with **di** (rarely with **fra** or **tra**, among).

Ex.: *l'Italia è il più bel paese del mondo*, Italy is the most beautiful country in the world.

#### ABSOLUTE SUPERLATIVE

**45.** The absolute superlative is formed:

1. By means of adverbs like **molto** or **assai**, very, and less frequently with **sommamente** or **estremamente**, extremely.

Ex.: *lo struzzo è molto* or *assai veloce*, the ostrich is very fast.

2. By adding the termination **-issimo** to the adjective.

Ex.: *generoso*, generous; *generosissimo*, very generous; *forte*, strong; *fortissimo*, very strong.

NOTE: The ending **-issimo** is inflected, and adjectives drop their final vowel before adding it.

46. A few adjectives (see § 38) besides a regular superlative have also an irregular one as follows:

alto	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{molto alto} \\ \text{altissimo} \end{array} \right\}$	supremo, very high (supreme).
grande	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{molto grande} \\ \text{grandissimo} \end{array} \right\}$	massimo, very great.
piccolo	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{molto piccolo} \\ \text{piccolissimo} \end{array} \right\}$	minimo, very small.
buono	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{molto buono} \\ \text{buonissimo} \end{array} \right\}$	ottimo, very good.
cattivo	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{molto cattivo} \\ \text{cattivissimo} \end{array} \right\}$	pessimo, very bad.
basso	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{molto basso} \\ \text{bassissimo} \end{array} \right\}$	infimo, very low.

NOTE: The absolute superlatives **supremo**, etc., are sometimes used as relative superlatives when preceded by the definite article.

Ex.: *Shakespeare è il massimo poeta inglese*, Shakespeare is the greatest English poet.

47. Several adjectives have also an irregular superlative in **-errimo**, of Latin derivation.

*acre*, sour, sharp, bitter; *acerrimo*, very bitter, etc.; *misero*, wretched; *miserrimo*, very wretched; *celebre*, famous; *celeberrimo*, very famous.

48. English *most* followed by a noun is rendered by **la più parte** (di), and more often by **la maggior parte** (di).

Ex.: most Americans, *la più or maggior parte degli Americani*.

NOTE: The superlative of **assai**, much, used as adverb, cannot be formed by prefixing **molto**, very (cf. English, very much), but must be rendered with **moltissimo**, very much.

## EXERCISE IX

### VOCABULARY

<b>assicúro</b> , I assure.	<b>lírico</b> , lyric.
<b>cáusa</b> , causes ( <i>verb</i> ).	<b>lótta</b> , strife.
<b>che</b> , that.	<b>lúi</b> , him.
<b>controvérsia</b> , controversy.	<b>metrópoli</b> , <i>f.</i> , metropolis.
<b>coraggióso</b> , courageous.	<b>onestà</b> , honesty.
<b>córso</b> , course.	<b>Oriénte</b> , <i>m.</i> , East, Orient.
<b>crítico</b> , critic.	<b>pittorésco</b> , picturesque.
<b>differénza</b> , difference.	<b>política</b> , policy, politics.
<b>fórse</b> , perhaps.	<b>político</b> , political.
<b>Giappóne</b> , <i>m.</i> , Japan.	<b>popolóso</b> , populous.
<b>intellettuaíle</b> , intellectual.	<b>risultáto</b> , result.
<b>intraprendénte</b> , enterprising.	<b>romanziére</b> , <i>m.</i> , novelist.
<b>Le</b> , you.	<b>sbáglío</b> , mistake, error.
<b>letterário</b> , literary.	<b>spéssó</b> , often.
<b>lezióne</b> , <i>f.</i> , lesson.	<b>tímido</b> , timid.
<b>língua</b> , language.	

(Also words given in preceding lessons.)

A. — 1. Il Fogazzaro è uno dei più grandi romanzieri italiani. 2. Gli Americani sono i più intraprendenti commercianti del mondo. 3. I laghi della Lombardia sono i più pittoreschi d'Europa. 4. Milano è commercialmente la città più importante d'Italia, e Napoli la più popolosa. 5. Il Carducci fu il massimo poeta lirico dell'Italia moderna e uno dei critici più potenti della letteratura italiana. 6. Parigi è forse la città più intellettuale del mondo. 7. Le lotte politiche sono talvolta acerrime. 8. La maggior parte

delle università americane offrono dei corsi di lingua italiana. 9. La lezione d'oggi è molto facile. 10. Giovanni è un giovane fortissimo ma molto timido.

B. — 1. This is the best climate in the world. 2. New York is the largest city of the New World. 3. Honesty is the best policy. 4. I assure<sup>2</sup> you<sup>1</sup> that the difference is very small. 5. Japan is the most enterprising nation of the East. 6. (He) is a very<sup>2</sup> courageous<sup>3</sup> man<sup>1</sup>. 7. The least mistake sometimes causes very bad results. 8. My uncle was always very generous with him. 9. To-day's lesson is perhaps the easiest in the grammar. 10. The literary<sup>2</sup> controversy<sup>1</sup> on Tasso's «Gerusalemme Liberata» (Jerusalem Delivered) was very bitter in Italy.

## LESSON X

### NUMERALS

#### CARDINALS

**49.** The following table shows how cardinal numbers are named in Italian.

0 zero	
1 un, uno, <i>m.</i> , un', una, <i>f.</i>	19 diciannove (diecinove)
2 due	20 venti
3 tre	21 ventuno
4 quattro	22 ventidue
5 cinque	30 trenta
6 sei	31 trentuno
7 sette	32 trentadue
8 otto	40 quaranta
9 nove	50 cinquanta
10 dieci	60 sessanta
11 undici	70 settanta
12 dodici	80 ottanta
13 tredici	90 novanta
14 quattordici	100 cento
15 quindici	200 duecento (dugento)
16 sedici	1000 mille
17 diciassette (diecisette)	2000 due mila
18 diciotto (dieciotto)	1,000,000 un milione.

REMARKS. — 1. For the use of **un, uno, un', una**, see § 3.

2. **Venti, trenta**, etc., drop the final vowel before **uno** and **otto**.

3. **Cento** and **mille** are never preceded by **un**.

4. No conjunction is required between numbers.

Ex.: *mille settecento quarantanove*, 1749.

5. Tens of hundreds must be expressed by *mille*, (pl. *mila*).

Ex.: fourteen hundred, *mille quattrocento*.

6. *Mille* and *milione* have the plural forms *mila* and *milioni*.

**50.** In speaking of the days of the month, cardinal numbers must be used in Italian with the exception of the *first*, **primo**, or when the word **giorno** occurs. The English preposition *on* is always omitted.

Ex.: *il cinque maggio*, May the fifth; *il primo d'agosto*, August the first; *il terzo giorno di marzo* (on) the third day of March.

**51.** English expressions like *I am ten, twenty, etc., years old*, are rendered in Italian by corresponding forms of the verb **avere** (to have), or **compire** (*lit.* to complete).

Ex.: *he is twenty-five years old*, (egli) **ha** *venticinque anni*; *he will be twenty (years old) to-morrow*, (egli) **compirà** *i venti (anni) domani*.

**52.** *In* or *within* when referring to future time are rendered by **fra** or **entro**.

Ex.: *I hope to speak Italian in a year*, *spero di parlare italiano fra un anno*; *I will come in a few minutes*, (io) *verrò fra pochi minuti*.

**53.** The English word *ago* is usually **fa** (from *fare*, to make) in Italian.

Ex.: *due anni fa*, two years ago.

NOTE: *What time is it?* is usually expressed by **che ora è**

or **che ore sono?** A few answers are given below (the verb is used or omitted at pleasure).

(è) *un'ora*, (è) *l'una*, (è) *il tocco* (rarely *sono le una*), it is one o'clock; (*sono*) *le due*, *le tre*, etc., it is two, three o'clock, etc.; (*sono*) *le sei e un quarto*, *le otto e dieci*, it is six fifteen, eight ten; (*sono*) *le undici e mezzo* or *mezza*, *le dieci e tre quarti*, it is eleven thirty, (a) quarter to eleven; (*sono*) *le nove meno venti* or *venti minuti alle nove*, twenty minutes of nine; (è) *mezzogiorno* or (*sono*) *le dodici* (rare), it is twelve o'clock (midday); (è) *mezzanotte*, it is midnight.

## EXERCISE X

## VOCABULARY

<b>abitante</b> , <i>m.</i> , inhabitant.	<b>libero</b> , free.
<b>avéva</b> , was ( <i>lit.</i> had).	<b>lo</b> , him.
<b>cannóne</b> , <i>m.</i> , gun.	<b>morì</b> , (he) died.
<b>capitolò</b> , surrendered.	<b>muséo</b> , museum.
<b>clásse</b> , <i>f.</i> , class.	<b>o</b> , or.
<b>duránte</b> , during.	<b>párte</b> , leaves (does . . . leave).
<b>fésta</b> , feast.	<b>párto</b> , I leave.
<b>fortézza</b> , fortress.	<b>precíso</b> ( <i>lit.</i> precise), sharp.
<b>fráncó</b> ( <i>used in compounds</i> ), Franco.	<b>príma di</b> , before.
<b>generále</b> , <i>m.</i> , general.	<b>prussiáno</b> , Prussian.
<b>guérra</b> , war.	<b>quándo</b> , when.
<b>incontrái</b> , I met.	<b>quánti</b> , how many.
<b>ingrésso</b> , entrance.	<b>quási</b> , nearly.
<b>invitáto</b> , guest.	<b>tréno</b> , train.

(Also words given in preceding lessons.)

A. — 1. Durante la guerra franco-prussiana del mille ottocento settanta, il generale francese Bazaine capitolò nella fortezza di Metz con più di cento ottanta mila soldati e seicento cannoni. 2. Il più giovane della classe ha sedici anni. 3. Napoleone I (*primo*) morì a Sant'Elena il cinque

maggio mille ottocento ventuno. 4. Il primo d'agosto parto per l'Italia. 5. Due giorni fa è arrivato mio fratello dall' Europa. 6. A che ora parte il treno per Roma? — Alle tre e venticinque. 7. L'ingresso al museo è libero il (on) lunedì e il venerdì dalle nove alle cinque. 8. Sono già le otto e venti e il treno non è ancora arrivato. 9. Quanti anni ha questo fanciullo? — Ha dodici anni. 10. Gl'invitati alla festa sono più di cento.

B. — 1. Naples, the most populous city of Italy, has (*fa*) nearly one million (of) inhabitants. 2. The boy will be twelve years old to-morrow. 3. He leaves for Europe on the twenty-third of May. 4. The train leaves to-night at seven fifteen sharp (*fem. plural*). 5. What time is it? — It is ten twenty; ten minutes of eleven; three thirty. 6. How old was Napoleon I when he died? 7. Napoleon III (*terzo*) surrendered at Sedan with an army of nearly eighty-three thousand men and six hundred and twenty guns. 8. The train leaves in five minutes. 9. I met<sup>2</sup> him<sup>1</sup> two or three days ago. 10. I leave to-day before five o'clock.



## LESSON XI

### NUMERALS (*Continued*)

#### ORDINALS

**54.** The ordinal numbers are named in Italian as follows:

1st	primo	50th	cinquantesimo		
2d	secondo	100th	centesimo		
3d	terzo	200th	duecentesimo		
4th	quarto	1000th	millesimo		
5th	quinto	10,000th	diecimillesimo		
6th	sesto	100,000th	centomillesimo		
7th	settimo	1,000,000th	milionesimo		
8th	ottavo	last, ultimo.			
9th	nono				
10th	decimo				
11th	undicesimo (undecimo <i>or</i> decimo primo)				
12th	dodicesimo (duodecimo <i>or</i> decimo secondo)				
13th	tredecimesimo (decimo terzo)				
14th	quattordicesimo (decimo quarto)				
15th	quindicesimo (decimo quinto)				
16th	sedicesimo (decimo sesto)				
20th	ventesimo ( <i>rarely</i> vigesimo)				
21st	ventesimo primo (ventunesimo)				
22d	ventesimo secondo (ventiduesimo)				
23d	ventesimo terzo (ventitreesimo)				
24th	ventesimo quarto (ventiquattresimo)				
30th	trentesimo				
31st	trentesimo primo (trentunesimo)				
40th	quarantesimo				

REMARKS. — 1. All ordinal numbers are inflected like adjectives and agree in gender and number with their noun.

Ex.: *il quinto giorno*, the fifth day; *la quinta parte*, the fifth part; *i primi anni*, the first years; *le prime guerre*, the first wars.

2. Ordinal numbers are used as in English with names of sovereigns but the article is omitted in Italian.

Ex.: *Luigi decimo quarto*, Louis the Fourteenth; *Vittorio Emanuele secondo*, Victor Emmanuel the Second.

3. *Mezzo* (half) is inflected like an adjective when it precedes the noun; it may be invariable when it follows the noun.

Ex.: *mezzo dollaro*, half a dollar; *mezza lira*, half a franc; *mezz'ora*, half an hour; *due libbre e mezzo* or *mezza*, two pounds and a half.

4. *Metà*, *f.*, half, is always used as a noun.

## EXERCISE XI

### VOCABULARY

•árte, <i>f.</i> , art.	platéa, orchestra ( <i>pit of a theater</i> ).
arríva, arrives.	póvero, poor.
bigliétto, ticket.	presidén-te, <i>m.</i> , president.
cappéllo, hat.	progréss-o, progress.
comperáto, bought.	quí, here.
cósta, costs.	sarà, will be.
denáro, money.	scientífico, scientific.
disástro, disaster.	sconfortánte, distressing.
drammático, dramatic.	sécolo, century.
fila, row.	sómma, sum.
imperatóre, emperor.	totále, total.
intensamén-te, intensely.	tútto, <i>adj.</i> ; all.
lasciáto, left.	único, unique.
notízia, news.	vendúto, sold.
pagáto, paid.	

(Also words given in preceding lessons.)

A. — 1. Vittorio Emanuele secondo fu il primo re d'Italia. 2. Il progresso scientifico del secolo decimo nono è unico nella storia. 3. Il secolo di Leone (Leo) decimo fu il periodo aureo delle arti in Italia. 4. Il canto trentesimo terzo dell' «Inferno» di Dante è forse il più intensamente drammatico della «Divina Commedia» (Divine Comedy). 5. Napoleone terzo fu l'ultimo imperatore di Francia. 6. Il biglietto ferroviario costa cinque dollari e mezzo. 7. Le prime notizie del disastro sono molto sconcertanti. 8. Ho pagato questo cappello tre dollari e un quarto. 9. La quarta fila della platea è tutta venduta. 10. Il treno arriva alle sei e mezza.

B. — 1. I have bought half a bottle of good wine. 2. The train will be here in half an hour. 3. Louis the Fourteenth was (*fu*) the last of the great kings of France. 4. The commercial development of the United States during the second half of the nineteenth century was perhaps the greatest in the history of the world. 5. This hat costs seven francs and a half. 6. The second part of this book is better than the first. 7. Washington\* was the first president of the United States. 8. Half of the money was left to the poor (put in the plural). 9. To-day's lesson is the eleventh in (of) the book. 10. I have already paid one third of the total sum.

\* Do not use the article.

## LESSON XII

### PRONOUNS

#### SUBJECT PRONOUNS

**55.** Subject pronouns are generally omitted in Italian unless required for emphasis or to avoid ambiguity.

The subject pronouns are:

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st person	<b>io</b> , I	<b>noi</b> , we
2d person	<b>tu</b> , thou (you)	<b>voi</b> , you
3d person	<b>egli</b> or <b>esso</b> , he	<b>eglino*</b> or <b>essi</b> , they
	<b>esso</b> , it	
	<b>ella</b> or <b>essa</b> (lei), she	<b>elleno*</b> or <b>esse</b> , they, <i>f.</i>
	<b>essa</b> , it	
	<b>Ella</b> (Lei), you, <i>m.</i> and <i>f.</i>	<b>Loro</b> , you, <i>m.</i> and <i>f.</i>

NOTE: **Esso**, **essa**, **essi**, **esse** refer both to persons and things; **ella** (**lei**), **elleno**, only to persons.

**56.** **Tu**, thou (to be translated by you), is used almost exclusively between intimate friends and relatives and in sacred or poetical style. It is used sometimes in addressing servants and almost invariably in speaking to children.

**57.** **Voi**, you, may be limited to one person, though the verb is always in the second person plural. When so used, this pronoun is a kind of intermediate between the informal **tu** and the formal **Ella**. It may be interchanged with **tu** in sacred or poetical style, but as a general rule it is used invariably in commercial style, by children to elders, and by officers in addressing their inferiors in rank.

\* **Eglino** is still used in literary language, though rarely; **elleno** is now an obsolete form; in their place **essi** and **esse** are used.

**58.** **Ella** and **Loro** are the polite or formal pronouns used by society in general. These pronouns require respectively the *verb*, *object pronouns*, and *possessives* in the third person singular or plural.

NOTE: In familiar style **Lei** is often used instead of **Ella**.

### OBJECT PRONOUNS

**59.** Object pronouns are divided into two classes: *conjunctive* and *disjunctive*. Conjunctive when used as direct or indirect object of a verb. Disjunctive when used independently of a verb or as the object of a preposition.

**60.** The conjunctive object pronouns are:

SINGULAR	PLURAL
mi, me, to me	ci, us, to us
ti, thee, to thee (you, to you)	vi, you, to you
gli, to him, to it	loro, them, to them, <i>m.</i> and <i>f.</i> ;
	Loro, you, to you ( <i>pl.</i> )
lo, him, it	li, them, <i>m.</i> ; Li, you
le, to her, to it; Le, to you, <i>m.</i> and <i>f.</i>	le, them, <i>f.</i> ; Le, you
la, her, it; La, you, <i>m.</i> and <i>f.</i>	ne, of them, about them, for
ne, of it, about it, for it	them
si, <i>refl.</i> , himself, herself, to himself, to	si, themselves, to themselves,
herself; yourself, <i>m.</i> and <i>f.</i>	<i>m.</i> and <i>f.</i> ; yourselves, <i>m.</i> and <i>f.</i>

NOTE: The final vowel of the conjunctives (except **le** and **li**, which are invariable, and **ci** and **vi**, which lose the final vowel only before **i**) may be elided before a vowel. Such elision (except in the case of **loro**) is indicated by an apostrophe.

**61.** The conjunctive pronouns usually precede the verb except when used with an *infinitive*, a *present participle*, the second person singular and the first and second plural of the *imperative* (affirmative). In compound tenses the pronoun precedes the auxiliary.

Ex.: *mi pare*, (it) seems to me; *vederla*, to see her (the infinitive drops the final vowel before all conjunctive pronouns); *scrivendoti*, writing to you (*lit.* thee); *guardami*, look (thou) at me; *ricordiamoci*, let us remember; *ascoltatelo*, listen to him; *l'ho finito*, I have finished it.

NOTE 1. — **Loro** (to them) follows the verb and is not joined to it.

Ex.: *dice loro*, he says to them.

NOTE 2. — If the imperative is used negatively the pronoun or pronouns precede the verb.

Ex.: *non mi aspettate*, do not wait for me.

NOTE 3. — If the infinitive is governed by another verb (generally of motion), the pronoun may either follow the infinitive or precede the governing verb.

Ex.: *vado a vederli* or *li vado a vedere*, I am going to see them.

**62.** If two conjunctive pronouns are used, their position is the same as stated in the case of one single pronoun. When they precede the verb, the object pronoun always stands nearer the verb; when they follow, the indirect object pronoun precedes the direct object pronoun.

NOTE: The forms **mi**, **ti**, **si**, **ci**, **vi**, change final **i** to **e** when followed by **lo**, **la**, **li**, **le**, **ne**.

These pronouns are used separately when they precede the verb, and joined together when they follow.

Ex.: *me lo spiega*, he explains it to me; *ricordiamocelo*, let us remember it.

**63.** **Gli** and **le** become **glie** before **lo**, **la**, **li**, **le**, **ne**, and both pronouns are written as one word.

Ex.: *glielo ripeto*, I repeat it to him *or* to her (also to you, though in this case *Glielo* with the capital is sometimes used to avoid ambiguity); *parlargliene*, to speak to him *or* to her about it.

**64.** If the direct object is a pronoun of the first or second person, the pronoun in the dative (indirect object) is preferably a disjunctive pronoun and is usually placed after the verb.

Ex.: *mi rimetto a te*, I refer (the matter) to you.

NOTE: The context alone will in many cases suggest the exact translation of some pronouns (*lo*, *la*, etc.).

## EXERCISE XII

### VOCABULARY

adesso, now.	grato, grateful.
ascoltare, to listen.	interesse, <i>m.</i> , interest.
che, that.	leggere, to read.
chi, who.	parla, he speaks.
chiamare, (to) call.	perché, because.
credo, I believe.	po', rather ( <i>lit.</i> a little).
detto, said, told.	prendere, to take.
déve, must.	raccomando, (I) recommend.
dír(e), to tell, say.	ritardo, in —, late.
divertano ( <i>3d person pl.</i> , see § 58), amuse.	(io) sono, I am.
éccita, excites.	studiare, to study.
esorto, (I) urge.	tant-o, -a, <i>adj.</i> , so much; <i>pl.</i> , tant-i, -e, (so) many.
essere, (to) be.	troppo, too much, too.
facilmente, easily.	véde, <i>lit.</i> sees (see § 58).
fatto, done, made.	veduto, seen.
favore, <i>m.</i> , favor.	vólta, time.
genere, <i>m.</i> , kind.	vuóle, <i>lit.</i> wishes (see § 58).
giuoco, game.	

(Also words given in preceding lessons.)

A. — 1. Lei arriva sempre in ritardo. 2. Ella è molto gentile, signore. 3. Il giuoco del base-ball deve essere

assai bello perchè il signor Adams me ne parla sempre con interesse; oggi vado a vederlo. 4. Gliel'ho detto tante volte, ma Lei non mi vuole ascoltare. 5. Le raccomando di (to) parlargliene quando lo vede. 6. Gl'invitati sono tutti nel giardino; adesso vado a chiamarli e dir loro che il pranzo è in tavola (idiomatic: 'served'). 7. Io mi rimetto (§ 64) a loro perchè li credo più competenti di voi in questioni di questo genere. 8. Carlo è un buon giovane, ma si eccita un po' facilmente. 9. Mi pare che Loro si divertano un po' troppo, e io Li (see § 58) esorto a studiare di (omit) più. 10. Ella mi ha fatto un gran favore e gliene sono grato.

B. — 1. I am going to see him to-day. 2. I recommend them to you. 3. I have told him that he must study more. 4. You have (§ 58) made so many mistakes in to-day's lesson. 5. I am very grateful to you for the favor (insert 'that') you have (§ 58) done me. 6. Who has told you this? 7. This young man always speaks to him about it. 8. If you wish (§ 58) to read this book you can (*può*) take it. 9. I have seen him to-day. 10. Do (omit) you (put last) see it? 11. I do not believe it. 12. You must read it to me now. 13. I have told you so many times (insert *di*) not to do it. 14. Amuse yourselves but not too much. 15. You must tell her that he wishes to take it away (omit) from her (use dat. pron.). 16. She speaks to him about it but he does not wish to listen to her (use acc. pron.). 17. How many of them do you wish to take? 18. They have done us a great favor and we are very grateful to them for it. 19. I met him yesterday. 20. He sees them often.



## LESSON XIII

### DISJUNCTIVE OBJECT PRONOUNS

**65.** The disjunctive object pronouns are:

#### SINGULAR

**me**, me  
**te**, thee (you)  
**lui** (esso), him  
**lei** (essa), her  
**Ella**, and often **Lei**, you, *m.* and *f.*  
**sè**, *refl.*, himself, herself (also yourself when referring to a subject pronoun of the third person)

#### PLURAL

**noi**, us  
**voi**, you  
**loro\*** (essi), them, *m.*  
**loro\*** (essi), them, *f.*  
**Loro\***, \* you, *m.* and *f.*  
**sè**, \* themselves, *m.* and *f.*; also yourselves

**66.** Disjunctive pronouns do not stand necessarily after the verb; they may also precede. They are used as follows:

#### 1. After prepositions.

Ex.: *di me*, of me; *per lui*, for him; *da voi*, from you.

NOTE: Besides the regular forms **con me**, with me; **con te**, with thee; **con sè**, with himself, herself, themselves (*m.* and *f.*), corresponding forms of Latin derivation, **meco**, **teco**, **seco**, are also used, though rarely.

#### 2. For emphasis, instead of the conjunctive pronoun.

Ex.: *do il libro a Lei*, I give the book to you; instead of:  
*Le do il libro*, I give you the book.

3. Two disjunctive pronouns used in opposition to one another almost invariably follow the verb.

Ex.: *interroga Lei, non lui*, he questions you, not him.

\* **Loro** may substitute the reflexive **sè** when the latter refers to a plural subject; ex.: **lo facciano da loro**, let them do it by themselves (*or*, do it by yourselves). **Loro** must take the place of **sè** when reciprocal action is implied; ex.: **come vanno d'accordo tra loro!** How perfectly in harmony they are!

4. The disjunctive pronouns **lui**, **lei**, **loro** are often used in familiar style as subject pronouns.

Ex.: *lui* (for *egli*) *mi dice*, he says to me; *loro* (for *eglino*) *mi esortano a studiare*, they urge me to study.

NOTE: The forms **lui**, **lei**, **loro**, however, are always used as subject pronouns to render the English expressions **it is he**, *è lui*; **it was they**, *erano loro*, etc.

Likewise in exclamations the disjunctive pronouns should be used.

Ex.: *beato lui che non lo sa*, how fortunate he is not to know it.

### EXERCISE XIII

#### VOCABULARY

<b>alcúno</b> , <i>adj.</i> , any.	<b>pósto</b> , seat ( <i>lit.</i> place).
<b>avéva</b> , had.	<b>preócupa</b> , preoccupies.
<b>che</b> , who.	<b>présó</b> , taken.
<b>fáre</b> , (to) do.	<b>può</b> , may.
<b>indirizzáto</b> , addressed.	<b>sodisfátto</b> , satisfied.
<b>informazióne</b> ; <i>f.</i> , information.	<b>stamáne</b> , this morning.
<b>parláto</b> , spoken.	<b>stáncó</b> , tired.
<b>parlávano</b> , spoke.	<b>teátro</b> , theater.
<b>passeggiáto</b> , walked.	<b>uscíre</b> , to come or go out.
<b>portaléttere</b> , <i>m.</i> , ( <i>invariable</i> ) letter-carrier.	<b>va</b> , goes.
<b>póssó</b> , I can.	<b>vorrébbe</b> , (he) would like.

(Also words given in preceding lessons.)

A. — 1. Il maestro interroga te e non me. 2. La lettera è indirizzata a me. 3. Ho parlato a lui e non a Lei. 4. Ella si preoccupa troppo di loro. 5. Ho passeggiato con lui nel parco stamane. 6. Ho preso due posti per voi e uno per me. 7. Questo clima può essere buono per Loro ma non per me. 8. Il signor White mi ha detto tante belle cose di Lei. 9. Carlo va sempre a teatro da (by) sè. 10. Lui vorrebbe sempre uscire con me, ma io ho troppo da (to) fare.

B.—1. It is he who has done this. 2. Do (omit) you speak (§ 58) to him or to me? 3. I cannot give you any information about (*di*) him. 4. I cannot come out with you to-day because I am tired. 5. The letter-carrier had a letter for you this morning. 6. You (use *Ella*) cannot do this by yourself. 7. I am not satisfied with (*di*) you. 8. Have you (use *Ella*) any (§ 8, 5) money with you? 9. It was they who spoke, not we. 10. He has taken the books with him (*refl.*). (If *seco* is used, it should precede the direct object, i.e., the books.)

## LESSON XIV

### POSSESSIVES

#### 67. Forms of the possessive adjectives and pronouns:

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
MASCULINE	FEMININE	MASCULINE	FEMININE
(il) mio	(la) mia	(i) miei	(le) mie, my, mine
tuo	tua	tuoi	tue, thy, thine
suo*	sua*	suoi*	sue,* his, her, hers, its
nostro	nostra	nostri	nostre, our, ours
vostro	vostra	vostri	vostre, your, yours
loro*	loro*	loro*	loro,* their, theirs; your (see § 58)

68. The foregoing table shows that all possessives agree in gender and number with the noun which they either qualify as adjectives or represent as pronouns; i.e., the agreement of possessives must be with the thing possessed and not with the possessor.

Ex.: *le nostre azioni e le loro*, our actions and theirs.

NOTE: **Loro** is an invariable form, and the article which precedes it agrees in gender and number with the noun to which it refers.

Ex.: *il loro interesse*, their interest; *le loro idee*, their ideas.

69. The article is generally omitted before a possessive (used as adjective):

\* To avoid ambiguity write the possessive with a capital whenever used in connection with the personal pronouns **Ella** and **Loro** (see § 58).

1. When the noun modified by such possessive is in the singular and indicates *dignity* or *near relation*.

Ex.: *Sua Maestà*, His Majesty; *mio fratello*, my brother; *suo padre*, his or her father.

NOTE: However, the article is used before the possessive with the words: **sposo**, bridegroom; **sposa**, bride; **consorte**, husband or wife; **avo**, grandfather; **ava**, grandmother. Hence: *il mio avo*, my grandfather, etc.

2. When the possessive adjective precedes a noun used in apposition to a previous one.

Ex.: *Dante fu cacciato da Firenze, sua città natale*,  
Dante was banished from Florence, his native city.

3. In direct address, the possessive follows the modified noun without the latter being preceded by the definite article.

Ex.: *dove siete stati, amici miei?* Where have you been, my friends?

NOTE: In many instances the exact meaning of possessives like **suo**, **sua**, etc., can only be determined by the context. In detached sentences absolute clearness is not always possible.

**70.** The possessive adjective is usually replaced by the definite article provided the substitution does not cause ambiguity.

Ex.: *chiudete gli* (for *i vostri*) *occhi*, close your eyes.

**71.** The possessive is replaced by an indirect object pronoun and the article (sometimes only by the article), especially when the reference is to parts of the body, dress, and the like.

Ex.: *badi di non tagliarsi la mano*, be careful not to

cut your hand; *si levi il cappello*, take off your hat;  
*alzi la voce*, raise your voice.

**72.** The possessive pronouns are frequently used seemingly without reference to any noun. In this case, however, such nouns as **avere**, property, or **denaro**, money; **lettera**, letter; **soldati**, soldiers; **genitori**, parents; **parenti**, relatives, are understood.

Ex.: *vivo del mio*, I live with my own (money); *spende del suo*, he or she spends his or her money; *rispondo alla vostra gentilissima*, I answer your very kind letter; *il generale fu fatto prigioniero con tutti i suoi*, the general was made a prisoner with all his soldiers; *come stanno i tuoi?* How are your folks? (colloquial).

**73.** Expressions like *a friend of mine*, etc., must be rendered in Italian by **un mio amico** or **uno dei miei amici**.

## EXERCISE XIV

### VOCABULARY

**affatto**, at all, entirely.  
**altriménti**, otherwise.  
**ancóra**, still.  
**bén(e)**, well.  
**cáro**, dear.  
**corrén-te**, instant, current.  
**differén-te**, different.  
**dóve**, where.  
**dovrà**, I shall have (to).  
**famíglia**, family.  
**finíto**, finished.  
**fréddo**, cold.  
**incoraggiánte**, encouraging.  
**inténdo**, I hear, understand.  
**lavóro**, work,

**lóde, f.**, praise.  
**méri-ta**, deserves.  
**méri-to**, merit.  
**mettíamoci**, let us put on.  
**paróla**, word.  
**perdúto**, lost.  
**préndere**, (to) catch.  
**presén-to**, I introduce.  
**progrésso**, progress.  
**provvísto**, provided.  
**ricevúto**, received.  
**ringrázio**, I thank.  
**ripréndere**, to resume.  
**riputazióne, f.**, reputation.  
**ritorneránno**, (they) will return.

sì, yes.

sóno, (they) are.

soprábito, overcoat.

usciamo, let us go out.

vacanza, vacation.

vista, sight.

(Also words given in preceding lessons.)

A. — 1. Le presento un mio carissimo amico. 2. La sua riputazione come avvocato è superiore al suo merito. 3. Come stanno i Suoi, signor Neri? — Bene, grazie (see Voc.); e Lei è ancora in campagna colla Sua famiglia? — Sì, ma le vacanze sono presto finite e dovrò riprendere i miei studi all'università. 4. I Loro progressi nello studio della lingua italiana non sono affatto incoraggianti. 5. Ho ricevuto oggi la Sua gentilissima del venticinque corrente e La ringrazio dei Suoi consigli. 6. La tua biblioteca non è così ben provvista di (with) libri come la mia. 7. Mettiamoci il cappello e usciamo. 8. Alzi la voce, signorina, altrimenti non intendo.

B. — 1. Where is my pen and my book? 2. Their ideas are entirely different from ours. 3. I shall have to resume my work soon. 4. I thank you (use *La*) for (*di*) your kind words. 5. My parents (§ 72) are still in the (omit) country, but will return to (*in*) the (omit) city soon. 6. Your words are always encouraging. 7. His advice is always well received because his reputation is good. 8. His action deserves praise. 9. Take off your overcoat now, otherwise you (use *Ella*) may (*può*) catch cold. 10. The poor young man has nearly lost his (§ 71, third ex.) sight.

## LESSON XV

### DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES

**74.** Demonstrative adjectives agree in gender and number with the noun they determine and are regularly placed before it. They are:

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
MASCULINE	FEMININE	MASCULINE	FEMININE
<b>questo</b>	<b>questa</b> , this	<b>questi</b>	<b>queste</b> , these
<b>cotesto</b>	<b>cotesta</b> , that	<b>cotesti</b>	<b>coteste</b> , those
( <b>codesto</b> )	( <b>codesta</b> ), that	( <b>codesti</b> )	( <b>codeste</b> ), those
<b>quello</b>	<b>quella</b> , that	<b>quelli</b>	<b>quelle</b> , those

**75.** *Questo*, usually refers to something near the person who speaks; *cotesto*, to something near the person spoken to; *quello*, to something far from both.

Ex.: *questo calamaio*, this inkstand; *cotesta penna*, that pen (by you); *quella sedia*, that chair (yonder).

**76.** The singular forms *questo*, *questa*, *cotesto*, *cotesta* may drop final *o* or *a*, before a word beginning with a vowel.

Ex.: *quest'uomo*, this man; *quest'aria*, this air.

Such elision is rather rare in the corresponding plural forms.

The demonstrative *quello* changes its orthography like *bello* (see § 26).

### DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

**77.** The demonstrative pronouns have the same form as the demonstrative adjectives and agree in gender and number with the noun they represent.



Ex.: *questo ritratto è migliore di quello*, this portrait is better than that.

**78.** *Ciò* is often used instead of *questo* or *quello* when referring to an abstract idea, a statement, etc.

Ex.: *ciò è vero*, this or that is true.

**79.** There are certain forms of demonstrative pronouns in Italian that are used almost exclusively with reference to persons. These forms are:

SINGULAR		PLURAL
MASCULINE	FEMININE	MASCULINE AND FEMININE
<i>questi</i> } this man	<i>costei</i> , this woman	<i>costoro</i> { these men
<i>costui</i> }		{ these women
<i>cotesti</i> } that man	<i>cotestei</i> , that woman	<i>cotestoro</i> { those men
<i>cotestui</i> }		{ those women
<i>quegli</i> }		
( <i>quei</i> ) } that man	<i>colei</i> , that woman	<i>coloro</i> { those men
<i>colui</i> }		{ those women

NOTE: Of the foregoing pronouns, *cotestui*, *cotestei*, *cotestoro* are rarely used.

**80.** *Questi* and *quegli* can only be used as subject pronouns.

Ex.: *questi fu onorato*, this (man) was honored.

But: *parlo a quello* (not *quegli*), I speak to that man.

**81.** *Costui*, *costei*, *costoro* are emphatic forms and may sometimes convey an idea of contempt.

Ex.: *non badi a costui*, don't mind this fellow.

**82.** English *former* and *latter* are rendered by *quegli* and *questi* respectively when the reference is to persons; in other cases by *quello* and *questo*.

Ex.: *Dante e Shakespeare sono due grandi poeti; quegli*

*italiano questi inglese*, Dante and Shakespeare are two great poets; the former Italian, the latter English.

## EXERCISE XV

## VOCABULARY

ácqua, water.  
 apparténgono, belong.  
 ápra, open.  
 architettúra, architecture.  
 assicúra, assures.  
 cáldo, warm.  
 câmera, room.  
 che, that.  
 éra, was.  
 díce, says.

esercízio, exercise.  
 finéstra, window.  
 guánto, glove.  
 iéri, yesterday.  
 preferísco, I prefer.  
 scoláro, pupil.  
 seccatóre, *m.*, importunate fellow.  
 smentísce, denies.  
 tradúrre, (to) translate.

(Also words given in preceding lessons.)

A. — 1. Questa sedia è più comoda di quella. 2. Apra quella porta. 3. Cotesti libri appartengono a quel signore. 4. Costui m'assicura che il clima di quei paesi è buono. 5. Ciò può essere vero, ma questo giornale lo smentisce. 6. Questa lezione è facile, ma quella di ieri era difficile. 7. Quello scolaro è il più diligente della classe. 8. È un seccatore costui. 9. Questo è il mio cappello e quello è il Suo. 10. Preferisco questa camera a quella.

B. — 1. This water is not warm enough. 2. Those gloves are better than these. 3. That man denies it and says that it is not true at all. 4. That gentleman is one of the professors of this university. 5. These exercises are easy to (*da*) translate. 6. Where have (§ 58) you (use *Ella*) bought that (use *cotesto*) hat? 7. The architecture of that house is very beautiful. 8. I prefer this grammar to that. 9. Those (yonder) books belong to me. 10. Open that window for a few (*alcuni*) minutes.

## LESSON XVI

### RELATIVES

**83.** The relative pronouns are:

INVARIABLE FORMS		VARIABLE FORMS	
SING. AND PL. <i>m.</i> AND <i>f.</i>		SINGULAR	PLURAL
<b>che</b> , who, which, that;	<b>il quale</b> }	who, which,	<b>i quali</b> }
<b>cui</b> (only used as in- direct object)	<b>la quale</b> }	that	<b>le quali</b> }
			who, which, that

NOTE: All relative pronouns apply both to persons and things and are declined by means of prepositions as in English. Whether variable or invariable in form, they must be considered as of the same gender, number, and person as their antecedents.

**84.** The relative pronoun is always expressed in Italian, and cannot be separated from a governing preposition.

Ex.: *ecco un libro che mi piace*, here is a book (which) I like; *il signore di cui parli è un mio caro amico*, the gentleman (whom) you speak of is a dear friend of mine.

**85.** **Che** is chiefly used as subject and direct object, and **cui** as object of a preposition.

Ex.: *la signorina che legge*, the young lady *who* reads; *lo scolaro che il maestro ha lodato*, the pupil *whom* the teacher has praised; *un poeta di cui ammiro la forza*, a poet whose (see § 90) force I admire.

**86.** **Il quale**, **la quale**, **i quali**, **le quali** are on account of

their inflections more precise forms than the invariable **che** and **cui**; hence, they are preferred when otherwise the antecedent would be in doubt.

Ex.: *la signora del capitano la quale è con noi*, the captain's wife who is with us.

**87.** The English relative *what*, when equivalent to *that which*, must be translated by the demonstrative **quello** (or **ciò**) and the invariable relative **che**.

Ex.: what he says is true, *quello (or ciò) che dice è vero*.

**88.** English expressions like *the one (which)*, *those which*, are likewise rendered by the demonstratives **quello**, **quella**, etc., and **che**.

Ex.: this lesson is not as easy as those which precede, *questa lezione non è così facile come quelle che precedono*.

**89.** The English forms *he who*, *she who*, *the one who*, may either be rendered by **colui** or **quegli che**, **colei che**, or simply by **chi**, provided it does not refer to an antecedent. The plural, *those who*, is always rendered either by **quelli che**, **quelle che**, or **coloro che**.

Ex.: he who speaks in this way is not a gentleman, *colui che or quegli che or chi parla in questo modo non è un gentiluomo*; those who are in the garden are our guests, *quelli che or coloro che sono nel giardino sono (i) nostri invitati*.

**90.** The English relative *whose* is either translated by **di cui** or by **cui** (in the latter case **cui** must be placed between the article and the noun, see the second example below) or by **del quale**, **della quale**, etc.

Ex.:

he is a writer whose talent all admire

è uno scrittore di cui tutti ammirano l'ingegno.  
 è uno scrittore il cui ingegno tutti ammirano.  
 è uno scrittore del quale tutti ammirano l'ingegno.

NOTE: As to the relative *whose* used interrogatively, see § 92, note.

## EXERCISE XVI

## VOCABULARY

accónto, account.  
 capísco, I understand.  
 comperáre, to buy.  
 contingénte, *m.*, quota, proportion.  
 cósa, thing.  
 dánno, (they) give.  
 dáto, given.  
 dévo, I owe.  
 díce, *lit.* says (§ 58).  
 dicéva, used to say.  
 emigrazióne, *f.*, emigration.  
 gentilménte, kindly.  
 indifferénte, indifferent.  
 lúce, shines.  
 mándo, I send, I am sending.  
 mattína, morning.  
 mercáto, a buon —, cheap.

meridionále, southern.  
 nùlla, nothing.  
 opportunità, opportunity.  
 óro, gold.  
 orológio, watch.  
 provérbio, proverb.  
 província, province.  
 restituísco, I give back.  
 ríde, (he) laughs.  
 stringe, gets (*lit.* clasps).  
 Svizzera, Switzerland.  
 trátta, (he) treats.  
 último, last.  
 véngono, (they) come.  
 vérsó, toward.  
 vógliono, (they) wish.  
 vuóle, (he) wishes.

(Also words given in preceding lessons.)

A. — 1. Capisco bene ciò ch'Ella dice. 2. Questa è la casa di cui ti ho parlato tante volte. 3. Il padrone per cui lavoro mi tratta molto gentilmente. 4. Non è tutto oro quello che luce. 5. Chi troppo vuole nulla stringe, dice un proverbio italiano. 6. Gli orologi americani sono spesso migliori di quelli che vengono dalla Svizzera. 7. Le resti-

tuisco il libro ch'Ella mi ha dato ieri mattina. 8. Questa è una bella opportunità per quelli che vogliono comperare delle belle cose a buon mercato. 9. Vi mando venti dollari in acconto di quello che vi devo. 10. Le provincie meridionali d'Italia sono quelle che danno il maggior contingente all'emigrazione italiana verso gli Stati Uniti.

B. — 1. I give back to you the books I have. 2. The house (§ 84) you (use *Ella*) wish to buy is not so cheap as he says it is (do not translate 'it is'). 3. He (omit) laughs best (*bene*) who laughs (insert *l'*) last. 4. I am grateful to you (use *Le*, § 61) for the opportunity (§ 84) you have given me (*conj. pron. dative*). 5. The things of which you (use *Ella*) speak are very important. 6. "I have three kinds of friends," Voltaire<sup>2</sup> used to say,<sup>1</sup> "the friends who love (*àmano*) me, the friends to whom I am indifferent and those who detest (*detéstano*) me." 7. I understand that what he says is true. 8. That is a young man whose talent all admire. 9. He is not always sure of what he says. 10. This is a thing (§ 84) I do (omit) not understand. 11. Has your friend spoken to you about it (§ 63)?

## LESSON XVII

### INTERROGATIVES

**91.** The interrogative pronouns are: **chi**, *who*, *whom*; **che**, *what*; **quale** (pl. **quali**), *which*, *what*.

**92.** **Chi** is used as subject or object with verbs or prepositions and can only refer to persons.

Ex.: *chi è quella signora?* Who is that lady? *a chi parla il maestro?* To whom does the teacher speak? *di chi è questa matita?* Whose pencil is this?

NOTE: When used interrogatively, *whose* is rendered by **di chi**; otherwise as stated in § 90.

**93.** **Chi**, as subject, is used in the plural with forms of *essere*, to be, but not with other verbs.

Ex.: *sa Ella chi sono?* Do you know who they are?

**94.** **Che**, when interrogative, may be used as object of a verb or a preposition, and refers to things only.

Ex.: *che vuole, signorina?* What do you wish, young lady? *a che pensi?* What are you thinking of?

NOTE: When used as in the two examples given above, **che** may be replaced by **che cosa** (*lit.* what thing) or simply **cosa**.

Ex.: *che cosa* or *cosa studia Ella?* What do you study?

**95.** **Che** may be used with an infinitive depending on another verb.

Ex.: *non so che dire*, I do not know what to say.

**96. Che** may precede nouns representing persons or things.

Ex.: *che uomo è costui?* What (sort of a) man is this?  
*che strada è questa?* What street is this?

**97. Che** is often used in exclamations.

Ex.: *che peccato!* What a pity! Too bad! *che bel viso!*  
 What a beautiful face!

**98. Quale?** (pl. **quali?**), which? when a pronoun, is used as subject or object with verbs or prepositions, and refers both to persons and things.

Ex.: *quali di questi libri desidera avere?* Which of these books do you wish to have?

**99. Quale?** (pl. **quali?**), which? when used as adjective precedes the noun. These forms have usually a more definite meaning than **che**.

Ex.: *in quali città siete stato?* In which cities have you been?

**100. Quale** and **quali**, what! are also used in exclamations.

Ex.: *quale splendore!* What splendor!

## EXERCISE XVII

### VOCABULARY

**addúrre**, (to) produce.

**assénza**, absence.

**avéte**, you have, have you?

**chiáma**, (he) calls.

**concérto**, concert.

**condúce**, leads.

**dévo**, I must.

**díca**, tell.

**éri**, you (*lit.* thou) were.

**favóre, per —**, kindly, (if you) please.

**giustificazióne, f.**, justification.

**inténdi**, you (*lit.* thou) intend.

**motívó**, motive, reason.



**nuóva**, news.

**póco**, little (while).

**prénde**, *lit.* (he) takes.

**qualcúno**, some one.

**rivólgere**, (to) turn, address.

**salutò**, *lit.* (he) saluted (see § 58).

**significáto**, meaning.

**studiáto**, studied.

**teléfono**, telephone.

**vedére**, to see.

(Also words given in preceding lessons.)

A. — 1. Chi è quel signore ch'Ella salutò poco fa? 2. Ho dato la mia penna a qualcuno, ma non ricordo a chi. 3. Cosa intendi di (to) fare durante le vacanze? 4. Mi dica, per favore, quale strada conduce al museo. 5. Che giorno è oggi? 6. Per qual motivo non avete studiato la lezione d'oggi? 7. Non eri al concerto ieri sera; che peccato! 8. Quali giustificazioni può Lei addurre per questa Sua assenza? 9. A chi devo rivolgermi per informazioni? 10. Di che paese è Lei?

B. — 1. Who calls me to the telephone? 2. Which (*sing.* and *pl.*) of these books do (omit) you (use *Ella*)<sup>2</sup> prefer (*preferisce*)<sup>1</sup>? 3. Whom do (omit) you (use *Ella*)<sup>3</sup> wish<sup>1</sup> to see<sup>2</sup>? 4. Whose overcoat<sup>3</sup> is<sup>1</sup> this<sup>2</sup>? 5. What news (*pl.*) have (§ 58) you (use *Ella*)? 6. Whom do (omit) you (use *Lei*) take (§ 58) me for? (§ 84). 7. What street is this, please? 8. What is the meaning of that word? 9. For what reasons have<sup>2</sup> (§ 58) you (use *Ella*)<sup>3</sup> not<sup>1</sup> studied to-day's lesson? 10. What must I (omit) do during your (translate in four different ways) absence?

## LESSON XVIII

### INDEFINITES

**101.** In the following treatment special attention is given to the most important indefinite adjectives and pronouns.

**102.** Indefinite pronouns such as *we, you, they, people, one*, are generally expressed in Italian by **si**, with the verb always in the third person singular.

Ex.: *si parte subito*, one (we, etc.) leaves (leave) immediately; *si può andare*, one may go.

**103.** Verbs that are used reflexively in the plural often denote reciprocal action. When such reciprocal meaning is not clear enough in the context, it may be emphasized by means of the indefinite pronouns **l'un l'altro** or their plural **gli uni gli altri**.

Ex.: *ci incoraggiamo*, we encourage ourselves; *ci incoraggiamo l'un l'altro* or *gli uni gli altri*, we encourage each other.

**104.** **Ogni**, each, every, modifies a singular noun only, and is both masculine and feminine.

Ex.: *ogni uomo*, each or every man; *ogni età*, each or every age.

NOTE: The singular forms **ognun(o)**, **ognuna**, each one, every one, are used as pronouns.

**105.** **Tutto, tutta**, whole, all, everything, and their plural **tutti, tutte**, all, everybody, every, are indefinite adjectives

as well as pronouns. As adjectives they always come first when the article is used with the noun.

Ex.: *tutto l'esercito*, the whole army; *tutte le strade*, all the streets, every street.

**106.** **Alcun(o),\* alcuna, alcuni, alcune**, some, some one, any, any one, a few, are used both as adjectives and pronouns.

Ex.: *alcuni scolari lavorano volentieri*, some pupils work willingly; *non ho incontrato alcuno*, I have not met any one.

NOTE: The singular forms **alcuno, alcuna** are rarely used in the singular except in negative sentences; the invariable **qualche**, some, a few, always preceding a singular noun, replaces them.

Ex.: *datemi qualche cosa*, give me something; *hai qualche foglio di carta?* Have you some sheets of paper?

**107.** **Nessun(o), nessuna**, no, nobody, no one, have no plural forms (except in colloquial style) and are used both as adjectives and pronouns. The emphatic negative **non** is generally required when **nessuno** or **nessuna** follow the verb (not when they precede or when used alone).

Ex.: *nessun allievo sa la lezione?* *Nessuno*, no student knows the lesson? No one; *non c'è nessuno ancora?* Is there no one yet? *nessuno è arrivato*, no one has arrived.

**108.** **Niente** or **nulla**, nothing, are invariable and used only as pronouns. The negative **non** is used with these forms as with **nessuno** (§ 107).

Ex.: *nel Suo compito non c'è niente* or *nulla di buono*, in your (written) lesson there is nothing good;

\* **Alcuno** is rarely used in the singular as a pronoun, **qualcuno** or **qualcheduno** taking its place. In the plural, **alcun-i, -e**, are common.

*niente* or *nulla da fare per domani*, nothing to do for to-morrow.

NOTE: **Niente** and **nulla** take **di** before an adjective and **da** before a verb. (See examples above.)

**109.** The indefinite **un(o)**, when inflected and preceded by the definite article, is used as a pronoun and is generally contrasted or combined with some forms of **altro**, viz.: **l'un l'altro**, each other; **l'uno e l'altro**, both; **l'uno o l'altro**, either; **nè l'uno nè l'altro**, neither. (**L'un l'altro**, etc., have also a pl., **gli uni gli altri**, etc.)

Ex.: *non mi piace nè l'uno nè l'altro di questi quadri*, neither (one) of these pictures pleases me; *gli uni si divertono, gli altri lavorano*, some (*lit.* the ones) amuse themselves (the) others work.

**110.** **Chiunque**, whoever, any one, is an invariable pronoun and is not used in the plural.\* It refers only to persons.

Ex.: *chiunque lo dice si sbaglia*, whoever says so is mistaken; *lo capisce chiunque*, any one understands it.

**111.** **Qualunque**, any, whatever, is used as a pronoun† instead of **chiunque**, and is also an adjective. It is invariable and has no plural.

Ex.: *qualunque* or *chiunque può farlo*, any one can do it; *qualunque mezzo è buono*, any means is good; *qualunque cosa*, anything.

**112.** **Tal(e)** (pl. **tali**), such a, such, so and so, is used both as adjective and pronoun.

Ex.: *tali esempi sono rari*, such examples are rare; *tale è la mia impressione*, such is my impression; *il tale è partito*, so and so has left.

\* See, however, § 93.

† As a pronoun, *qualunque* may be followed by plural forms of *essere* only.

Ex.: *qualunque siano*, whoever they may be.

## EXERCISE XVIII

## VOCABULARY

aiutáto, helped.	perorazióne, <i>f.</i> , peroration.
cambiáre, (to) change.	piacére (a), (to) please.
commósso, touched.	pósso, I can.
compétere, (to) compete.	présto, hurry up.
condúcono, (they) lead.	próssimo, next.
dirítto, right.	rimáse, remained.
esprímere, (to) express.	riposáre, (to) rest.
estáte, <i>f.</i> , summer.	rovéscio, reverse.
férma, <i>si</i> —, stops.	servíre, (to) serve.
gára, contest.	spína, thorn.
invitáto, invited.	stazióne, <i>f.</i> , station.
invíto, invitation.	trovára, (to) see, visit, ( <i>lit.</i> to find).
medágliá, medal.	uditório, audience.
parláre, to speak.	visibilménte, visibly.
partecipáre, (to) take part.	
passáre, (to) pass.	

(Also words given in preceding lessons.)

A. — 1. Molti amici vengono a trovarmi in campagna ogni estate. 2. Ho studiato tutto il giorno ieri, così oggi posso riposarmi un po'. 3. Ogni rosa ha le sue spine. 4. Il signor Neri mi ha invitato a passare alcune settimane con lui. 5. Il treno si ferma qualche minuto alla prossima stazione. 6. Nessuno mi ha aiutato, qualunque sia (be) il merito di questo lavoro. 7. In questa gara può competere chiunque. 8. La perorazione dell' avvocato fu tale che tutto l'uditorio ne rimase visibilmente commosso. 9. Il tale mi ha detto che nessuno può partecipare alla festa senza un invito. 10. Presto, signori, si parte subito.

B. — 1. Every one for himself and God for us (omit) all. 2. Everybody's friend is nobody's friend. 3. Money leads to everything. 4. You cannot (§ 102) please everybody. 5. No man can serve two masters. 6. All roads

lead to Rome. 7. Every medal has its reverse. 8. My impression is such that (*che*) no one could (*potrebbe*) change it. 9. Any one has the right to (*di*) express his own (trans. *proprie*) opinions. 10. Some one wishes to speak to you.

## LESSON XIX

### THE VERB

#### THE AUXILIARY ESSERE

**113.** The conjugation of the irregular verbs *essere* and *avere* is given before that of the regular verbs because they are used as auxiliaries to form all the compound tenses. (As for the use of the *acute* accent in the conjugation of *essere* and all other verbs in this grammar, see Introductory Chapter, section *d*, remark.)

#### CONJUGATION OF ESSERE

**114.** Infinitive: *essere*, to be. Pres. part.:\* *essendo*. being. Past part.: *stato*, been.

##### PRESENT INDICATIVE

(io)† *sóno*, I am, etc.

(tu) *séi*

(egli, ella) *è*

(noi) *siámo*

(vói) *siéte*

(églino, élleno) *sóno*

##### PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE‡

*sía*, I may be, etc.

*sía*

*sía*

*siámo*

*siáte*

*síano or síeno*

##### IMPERFECT INDICATIVE FUTURE INDICATIVE PRESENT CONDITIONAL‡

*érai*, I was, etc.

*sarò*, I shall be,

*saréi*, I should be,

*éri*

*sarái* etc.

*sarésti* etc.

*éra*

*sarà*

*sarébbe*

*eravámo*

*sarémo*

*sarémmo*

*eraváte*

*saréte*

*saréste*

*éranó*

*saránno*

*sarébbéro*

\* It is really a gerund; however, this name will be used as it is more familiar, and also because the present participle is always used in Italian as an adjective.

† The subject pronouns of verbs are generally omitted in Italian, the person being in most cases sufficiently indicated by the endings of the verbs. They are used, of course, in doubtful cases.

‡ The subjunctive and conditional tenses of this and other verbs are variously rendered according to the context.

PRETERIT	IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERATIVE*
<b>fúi</b> , I was, etc.	<b>fóssi</b> , I might be, etc.	
<b>fósti</b>	<b>fóssi</b>	<b>síi</b> or <b>sía</b> , be (thou)
<b>fu</b>	<b>fósse</b>	<b>sía</b> , let him (her) be
<b>fúmmo</b>	<b>fóssimo</b>	<b>siámo</b> , let us be
<b>fóste</b>	<b>fóste</b>	<b>siáte</b> , be (you)
<b>fúrono</b>	<b>fóssero</b>	<b>siano</b> , let them be

**115.** Unlike English, the verb **essere** builds its own compounds, and the past participle agrees in gender and number with the subject of the verb: **è stato**, he has been; **era stata**, she had been; **sono stati**, they (*m.*) have been; **saranno state**, they (*f.*) shall have been.

**116.** The passive construction is formed in Italian with **essere** as auxiliary and a past participle which agrees in gender and number with the subject of the verb.

Ex.: *la lettera è scritta*, the letter is written; *le lettere sono scritte*, the letters are written.

NOTE: The passive construction is often formed with verbs other than **essere** as an auxiliary. Of these the most important are: **stáre**, **restáre**, **veníre**, **rimanére**. When so used, the foregoing verbs are practically equivalent in meaning to **essere**.

**117.** The English impersonal forms *there is*, *there are*, *there was*, etc., are rendered in Italian by means of **ci** or **vi** (usually **c'** and **v'** before a vowel, and **ce** or **ve** before the pronoun **ne**), *there*, and forms of **essere**.

Ex.: *c'è*, there is; *c'era*, there was; *ci sono*, there are.

NOTE: Oftentimes **ci** and **vi** are actually equivalent forms of adverbs of place like **qui**, here, and **là**, there,

\* When negative, the second person singular of the imperative is rendered by **non essere**, be not (thou). The infinitive of all verbs is similarly used with **non**.



and are not as emphatic. In conversation they are widely used.

Ex.: *ci sono tutti*, all are here; *c'erano tutti*, all were there.

**118.** The auxiliary **essere** is used to form the compound tenses of many intransitive verbs.\* Some of frequent occurrence are:

*andáre*, to go; past part., *andáto*; *sono andato*, I have gone, etc.

*entráre*, to enter; past part., *entráto*; *sono entrato*, I have entered, etc.

*arriváre*, to arrive; past part., *arriváto*; *sono arrivato*, I have arrived, etc.

*partíre*, to depart; past part., *partíto*; *sono partito*, I have departed, etc.

*veníre*, to come; past part., *venúto*; *sono venuto*, I have come, etc.

*succédere* (impersonal), to happen; past part., *succéso*; *è successo*, (it) has happened, etc.

*uscíre*, to come (or go) out; past part., *uscíto*; *sono uscito*, I have come (or gone) out, etc.

## EXERCISE XIX

### VOCABULARY

*arriviámo*, we arrive.

*finíto*, finished; over.

*intérrogo*, I question.

*partiámo*, we start.

*preparáto*, prepared.

*scórso*, past, last.

*scrítto*, written.

*sorpréso*, surprised.

*vendúto*, sold.

(Also words given in preceding lessons; words not given are to be found in General Vocabularies.)

\* Usually, verbs implying an *action* take as auxiliary **avere**, while those implying a *fact* take **essere**. This rule, however, suffers exceptions, and hence the indication in this grammar of verbs taking a different auxiliary from English.

A. — 1. Ci sono ancora pochi minuti da (to) aspettare prima che il pranzo sia in tavola. 2. Siate più pronti a rispondere quando vi interrogo. 3. Oggi è arrivata la posta dall' Italia, e forse ci sarà qualche lettera per me. 4. Ieri sera a teatro c'era una gran folla e tutti i posti in platea erano già venduti quando sono arrivato. 5. Sarebbe meglio andare subito alla stazione perchè è probabile che il treno sia in orario questa volta. 6. Questo lavoro è scritto molto male e sarebbe meglio rifarlo. 7. È venuto alcuno a domandare di (for) me mentre io era assente? 8. Non c'è tempo da (to) perdere; sono quasi le tre, e se non partiamo subito, la prima partita sarà già finita quando arriviamo. 9. I raccolti dell' anno scorso furono scarsi, ma le previsioni per quest' anno sono molto incoraggianti. 10. La rappresentazione di ieri sera al «Metropolitan» fu veramente splendida, peccato che Lei non ci fosse (were)!

B. — 1. Criticism is easy but art is difficult. 2. There is no rule without exceptions. 3. This house was (*preterit*) sold last year. 4. These letters have arrived this morning. 5. I do (omit) not know (*so*) what has (*pres. subj.*) happened during all this time. 6. They will be surprised when they know (*sanno*) that you have arrived. 7. There is no one at (*in*) home. 8. I was very tired after the walk. 9. Be (you, *pl.*) well prepared because the examinations will be very difficult. 10. There was a big crowd last night at the theater.

## LESSON XX

### THE AUXILIARY AVERE

#### CONJUGATION

**119.** Infinitive: **avére**, to have. Pres. part.: **avéndo**, having. Past part.: **avúto**, had.

##### PRESENT INDICATIVE

ho, I have, etc.  
hái  
ha  
abbiámo  
avéte  
hánno

##### PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

ábbia, I may have, etc.  
ábbia  
ábbia  
abbiámo  
abbiáte  
ábbiano

##### IMPERFECT INDICATIVE

avéva,\* I had,  
avévi etc.  
avéva  
avevámó  
aveváte  
aveváo

##### FUTURE INDICATIVE

avrò, I shall have,  
avrái etc.  
avrà  
avrémó  
avréte  
avránno

##### PRESENT CONDITIONAL

avréi, I should have,  
avrésti etc.  
avrébbe  
avrémmo  
avréste  
avrébbero

##### PRETERIT

ébbi, I had, etc.  
avésti  
ébbe  
avémmo  
avéste  
ébbero

##### IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

avéssi, I might have,  
avéssi etc.  
avésse  
avéssimo  
avéste  
avéssero

##### IMPERATIVE

ábbi, have (thou)  
ábbia, let him (her) have  
abbiámo, let us have  
abbiáte, have (you)  
ábbiano, let them have

**120.** In compound tenses formed with the auxiliary **avere**, the past participle usually agrees in gender and num-

\* The first person of the Imperfect Indicative of all verbs may also end with o.

ber with a preceding direct object. It is usually invariable, but may also agree when the object follows the verb:

Ex.: *è questa la poesia che avete letta?* Is this the poem (that) you have read? *hai avuto* (or *avuta*) *una buona idea*, you have had a good idea.

**121. Avere** is used as auxiliary before active verbs. It is used also with nouns in many idiomatic expressions, whereas in English *to be* is used with adjectives. Of such expressions, the following are of frequent occurrence:

aver(e)\* *ragione*, to be right  
 aver(e) *torto*, to be wrong  
 aver(e) *fame*, to be hungry  
 aver(e) *sete*, to be thirsty

aver(e) *freddo*, to be cold†  
 aver(e) *caldo*, to be warm†  
 aver(e) *vergogna*, to be ashamed  
 aver(e) *paura*, to be afraid

## EXERCISE XX

### VOCABULARY

accendiâmo, we light.  
 assicûro, I assure.  
 comperâto, bought.  
 détto, said.

godúto, enjoyed.  
 ritorniâmo, we return.  
 sapéndo, knowing.  
 scommétto, I bet.

A. — 1. Giacchè Ella ha avuto la buona idea di venirci a trovare, abbia anche la bontà di restare a pranzo con noi.  
 2. Ieri sera ebbi l'imprudenza di (to) uscire senza soprabito e oggi ho un forte raffreddore. 3. Ella ha avuto ragione di non accettare quel posto. 4. Avrebbe Lei il

\* In order to avoid the recurrence of too many vowel sounds, the infinitive of Italian verbs may drop its final *e*. If two consecutive consonants precede the final *e*, one of them is also dropped; as, *condur(re)*, to lead.

† **Avere** is used thus idiomatically only with subjects representing animate objects.

Ex.: *ho freddo*, I am cold; but: *questa stanza è fredda*, this room is cold.

coraggio di sostenere una tal cosa sapendo di aver torto? 5. Scommetto che avremo fame quando ritorniamo da questa passeggiata. 6. Non abbia paura, Le assicuro che la cosa è facile. 7. Se non accendiamo il fuoco avremo freddo. 8. Quanti ne abbiamo del mese oggi? 9. Gli scritti del De Amicis hanno sempre goduto molta popolarità anche fuori d'Italia. 10. Se Ella aveva delle ragioni plausibili perchè non le ha dette? \*

B. — 1. I should have (*pres. cond.*) finished my exercise before, if I had (*imp. subj.*) had time. 2. When shall I have the pleasure of seeing (*inf.*) you? 3. Were (*preterit*) you (use *Ella*) afraid of the storm last night? 4. The experience (§ 84) he has had in this kind of work will be very useful to him (*conj. pron.*). 5. It seems to me (§ 61) that he was (*imp. subj.*) not right in (*di*) saying (use the *inf.*) that (§ 78). 6. I had (*imp. ind.*) no (insert 'any,' § 106) idea that the examination would be so difficult. 7. Have (3d person, § 58) a little (insert *di*) consideration for what (§ 87) he has done. 8. If I had (*imp. subj.*) had enough money, I should have bought that little farm a few years ago. 9. I had a terrible headache all day yesterday. 10. Have you finished your work?

\* When the preceding *direct* object is a personal pronoun (*mi, ti, lo, la, ci, vi*), the past participle usually takes the gender and number of such pronoun; in the case of the plural forms *li* and *le*, such agreement is necessary.

## LESSON XXI

### REGULAR VERBS

**122.** All regular verbs are divided into three conjugations or classes. The ending of the infinitive indicates to what conjugation the verb belongs.

<b>am-âre</b> , to love	1st conjugation
<b>créd-ere</b> , to believe	2d conjugation
<b>sent-îre</b> , to feel, hear	3d conjugation

**123.** The stem of regular verbs remains unchanged as shown in the conjugation of the following models:

#### FIRST CONJUGATION

*Amâre*, to love

Infinitive: **am-âre**, to love. Pres. Part.: **am-ândo**, loving.  
Past Part.: **am-âto**, loved.

##### PRESENT INDICATIVE

**âm-o**, I love,\* etc.  
**âm-i**  
**âm-a**  
**am-iâmo**  
**am-âte**  
**âm-ano**

##### PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

**âm-i**, I may love, etc.  
**âm-i**  
**âm-i**  
**am-iâmo**  
**am-iâte**  
**âm-ino**

##### IMPERFECT INDICATIVE

**am-âva**, I used to love,† etc.  
**am-âvi**  
**am-âva**

##### FUTURE INDICATIVE

**am-erò**, I shall love, etc.  
**am-erâi**  
**am-erâ**

##### PRESENT CONDITIONAL

**am-eréi**, I should love, etc.  
**am-erésti**  
**am-erébbe**

\* Also, I do love, I am loving, etc. This applies to all verbs.

† Also, I did love, I loved, I was loving, etc. This applies to all verbs.

am-avâmo  
am-avâte  
am-âvano

am-erêmo  
am-erête  
am-erânno

am-erêmmo  
am-erêste  
am-erébbero

PRETERIT

am-âi, I loved, etc.  
am-âsti  
am-ò  
am-âmmo  
am-âste  
am-ârôno

IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

am-âssi, I might love,  
am-âssi etc.  
am-âsse  
am-âssimo  
am-âste  
am-âssero

IMPERATIVE

âm-a, love (thou)  
âm-i, let him (her) love  
am-iâmo, let us love  
am-âte, love (you)  
âm-ino, let them love

**124.** The sound of the consonant immediately preceding the infinitive ending is usually preserved throughout the conjugation. Hence, the **c** and **g** of verbs ending in **-care** and **-gare** are followed by **h** before **e** or **i**.

Ex.: **giocare**, to play; **giocherò**, I shall play; **legare**, to tie; **leggi**, you tie.

**125.** Verbs ending in **-ciare** and **-giare** drop the final **i** before **e** or **i**, and verbs in **-chiare**, **-gliare**, **-sciare** drop the **i** only before another **i**.

Ex.: **lanci**, you throw (from **lanciare**); **mangerei**, I would eat (from **mangiare**).

EXERCISE XXI

VOCABULARY

affittâre, to let.  
applicâre, to apply.  
ascoltâre, to listen (to).  
chiûso, *adj.*, closed.  
domandâre, to ask.  
entrâre, to enter.  
fâtto, done.

giudicâre, to judge.  
imparâre, to learn.  
pagâre, to pay (for).  
parlâre, to speak.  
sperâre, to hope.  
studiâre, to study.  
trovâre, to find.

A. — 1. Gli Americani amano molto lo «sport.» 2. Se tu avessi un po' più d'esperienza non parleresti così.

3. Domani mattina giocheremo al «tennis» se il tempo è bello. 4. Le domando cosa ha fatto tutto il giorno ieri; se avesse studiato non Glielo domanderei certo. 5. Se studiano molto impareranno presto a parlare italiano. 6. Sono andato dal signor White per un affare importante ma non l'ho trovato in casa. 7. Mi ascolti prima, poi giudichi Lei se ho ragione o torto. 8. Che materie studi quest'anno? 9. Ella imparerebbe facilmente se si applicasse di più allo studio. 10. Quanto paghi al mese dove sei a dozzina?

B. — 1. I will pay you (*conj. pron. dative*) for these books to-morrow. 2. We will eat at eleven this morning. 3. I will ask him (*conj. pron. dative*) if he has time to (*di*) do this. 4. I have learned to read (insert 'the') Italian a little. 5. If I had (*imp. subj.*) studied more (*di più*) in the (omit) beginning I should not find these lessons so hard now. 6. Have you (use *Ella*) any (§ 8, 5) rooms to (*da*) let? 7. I found (*preterit*) the door closed last night. 8. Do not judge (p. 68, note) by (insert 'the') appearances. 9. I hope you will listen to (omit) him (*conj. pron. accusative*). 10. When I entered (*preterit*; insert 'in the') his room he was studying.



## LESSON XXII

### SECOND CONJUGATION

*Credere*, to believe, think

**126.** Infinitive: **créd-ere**, to believe. Pres. part.: **cred-én-do**, believing. Past part.: **cred-úto**, believed.

#### PRESENT INDICATIVE

**créd-o**, I believe, etc.

**créd-i**

**créd-e**

**cred-iámo**

**cred-éte**

**créd-ono**

#### PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

**créd-a**, I may believe, etc.

**créd-a**

**créd-a**

**cred-iámo**

**cred-iáte**

**créd-ano**

#### IMPERFECT INDICATIVE

**cred-évø**

**cred-évi**

**cred-éva**

**cred-evámo**

**cred-eváte**

**cred-évano**

#### FUTURE INDICATIVE

**cred-erò**, I shall believe,

**cred-erái** etc.

**cred-erà**

**cred-erémo**

**cred-eréte**

**cred-eránno**

#### PRESENT CONDITIONAL

**cred-eréi**, I should believe,

**cred-erésti** etc.

**cred-erébbe**

**cred-erémmo**

**cred-eréste**

**cred-erébbero**

#### PRETERIT

**cred-éi** or **cred-etti**,  
I believed, etc.

**cred-ésti**

**cred-è** or **cred-ette**

**cred-émmo**

**cred-éste**

**cred-érono** or

**cred-ettero**

#### IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

**cred-éssi**, I might  
believe, etc.

**cred-éssi**

**cred-ésse**

**cred-éssimo**

**cred-éste**

**cred-éssero**

#### IMPERATIVE

**créd-i**, believe (thou)

**créd-a**, let him (her) believe

**cred-iámo**, let us believe

**cred-éte**, believe (you)

**créd-ano**, let them believe

**127.** A few other verbs besides **credere** have a double form in the first and third person singular and third person plural of the preterit. Of these, the most important are: **frémere**, to fret; **gémere**, to moan; **pérdere**, to lose; **ricévere**, to receive; **temére**, to fear; **spléndere**, to shine; **godére**, to enjoy.

**128.** Verbs in **-cere** and **-scere** that have a regular past participle in **-uto**, insert **i** between **c** and **u** so as to preserve the soft sound of **c**:

**tacére**, to be silent; **taciúto**, been silent; **méscere**, to pour out; **mesciúto**, poured out.

## EXERCISE XXII

### VOCABULARY

**báttere**, to beat, knock.

**cédere**, to yield.

**combáttere**, to fight.

**copérto**, covered.

**ripétere**, to repeat.

A. — 1. Non perdano tempo e incomincino a studiare seriamente. 2. Oggi forse riceverò i libri di cui Le ho parlato ieri. 3. Perchè non ha battuto alla porta, Lei? 4. Quel giovane è così testardo che non cederà, te lo assicuro io. 5. Se tutti credono che il fatto è vero, perchè non lo crederebbe Lei? 6. Non sono entrato perchè temeva di (to) disturbare la classe. 7. Perchè hai taciuto se credevi di (to) aver ragione? 8. Che cambiamento repentino! Stamane splendeva il sole e adesso il cielo è tutto coperto di (with) nubi. 9. I Boeri combatterono valorosamente contro gli Inglesi e perdettero in una lotta gloriosa per la loro libertà. 10. Grazie al cielo ho sempre goduto buona salute.

B. — 1. Some one is knocking (see note \*, p. 74) at the door. 2. He does not lose his (§ 70) patience very easily.

3. I am sure that you will receive an invitation. 4. How many times (*pl. of volta*) shall I repeat these things? 5. Not only did Napoleon I fight (*preterit*) against the English (*pl.*) at Waterloo, but also against the elements. 6. You would enjoy better health if you walked (*imp. subj.*) a little every day (§ 105). 7. Too bad (§ 97; insert 'that') the sun doesn't shine to-day. 8. Do not fear (p. 68, note), I will help you. 9. I fear that my friend may not receive my letter in time. 10. He will think that I have (*pres. subj.*) done it (§ 61) on purpose.

## LESSON XXIII

### THIRD CONJUGATION

*Sentire*, to feel, hear

**129.** Infinitive: *sentire*, to feel. Pres. part.: *sentendo*, feeling. Past part.: *sentito*, felt.

#### PRESENT INDICATIVE

*sént-o*, I feel, etc.

*sént-i*

*sént-e*

*sent-iámo*

*sent-íte*

*sént-ono*

#### PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

*sént-a*, I may feel, etc.

*sént-a*

*sént-a*

*sent-iámo*

*sent-iáte*

*sént-ano*

#### IMPERFECT INDICATIVE

*sent-íva*, I felt, etc.

*sent-ívi*

*sent-íva*

*sent-ivámo*

*sent-iváte*

*sent-ívano*

#### FUTURE INDICATIVE

*sent-irò*, I shall feel,

*sent-irái* etc.

*sent-irà*

*sent-irémo*

*sent-iréte*

*sent-iránno*

#### PRESENT CONDITIONAL

*sent-iréi*, I should feel,

*sent-irésti* etc.

*sent-irébbe*

*sent-irémmo*

*sent-iréste*

*sent-irébbero*

#### PRETERIT

*sent-íi*, I felt, etc.

*sent-ísti*

*sent-ì*

*sent-ímmo*

*sent-íste*

*sent-írono*

#### IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

*sent-íssi*, I might feel,

*sent-íssi* etc.

*sent-ísse*

*sent-íssimo*

*sent-íste*

*sent-íssero*

#### IMPERATIVE

*sént-i*, feel (thou)

*sént-a*, let him (her) feel

*sent-iámo*, let us feel

*sent-íte*, feel (you)

*sént-ano*, let them feel

**130.** There are but a few verbs that are conjugated exactly like *sentire*. Of these the most important are:

**dormíre**, to sleep; **partíre**,\* to depart, leave; **fuggíre**, to flee; **servíre**, to serve; **vestíre**, to dress; **seguíre**, to follow. With a few exceptions (see § 131), all the other regular verbs of the third conjugation take **-isc** before the singular endings and the third plural of the *present indicative*, *present subjunctive*, and *imperative* as shown in the following table:

*Pulíre*, to clean

PRESENT INDICATIVE

pul-ísco, I clean, etc.

pul-ísci

pul-ísce

pul-iámo

pul-íte

pul-íscono

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

pul-ísca, I may clean, etc.

pul-ísca

pul-ísca

pul-iámo

pul-iáte

pul-íscano

IMPERATIVE

pul-ísci, clean (thou)

pul-ísca, let him (her) clean

pul-iámo, let us clean

pul-íte, clean (you)

pul-íscano, let them clean

**131.** Several verbs may be conjugated like **sentíre** or **pulíre**. Of these the most important are:

**abborríre**, to abhor; **assorbíre**, to absorb; **avvertíre**, to advise, warn, inform; **bollíre**, to boil; **divertíre**, to distract, amuse; **mentíre**, to lie; **applaudíre**, to applaud.

EXERCISE XXIII

VOCABULARY

**capíre**, to understand.

**finíre**, to finish.

**preferíre**, to prefer.

\* **Partíre**, when meaning *to divide*, follows **pulíre**.

A. — 1. Seguirò il Suo consiglio, signor maestro, non dubiti. 2. Partirei volentieri stasera, ma il tempo è troppo cattivo. 3. Quando sarà tempo di partire La avvertirò io, signore. 4. Hai sentito il temporale di ieri notte? 5. Quella signora veste sempre elegantemente e con gusto. 6. Molti schiavi romani servivano in capacità di pedagoghi. 7. Dei romanzi del Dickens quale preferisce Lei? 8. Adesso incomincio a capire un po' quando il maestro parla italiano. 9. Perchè non finisce Ella il Suo lavoro oggi? 10. Quando bollirà quest' acqua?

B. — 1. Why don't you clean your pen? 2. This water will boil in a few (§ 52) minutes. 3. Finish (3d person sing. imperative) this work to-day if you (use *Ella*) have time. 4. If I had (*imp. subj.*) to (*da*) choose I should prefer this color to that. 5. I warn you that if you (use *Ella*) continue to come so late, it will be impossible for (omit) you (*conj. pron. dative*) to (omit) follow my explanations. 6. This man has always served me (§ 61) faithfully. 7. I have heard him sing two or three times (see XXII, B, 4) when I was (*imp. ind.*) in (*a*) New York. 8. Why do you leave so soon? 9. She always<sup>2</sup> dresses<sup>1</sup> her two girls in (*di*) white. 10. He left (*preterit*) without informing (*inf.*) any one of his departure.

## LESSON XXIV

### REFLEXIVE AND IMPERSONAL VERBS

#### REFLEXIVE VERBS

**132.** The object pronouns used in the conjugation of reflexive verbs are the conjunctive pronouns **mi**, myself; **ti**, thyself (yourself); **si**, himself, herself; **ci**, ourselves; **vi**, yourselves; **si**, themselves (*m.* and *f.*).

**133.** The position of reflexive pronouns is like that of personal object pronouns (see § 61), and the subject pronoun is either used or omitted as stated in § 55.

Ex.: (*Loro*) *s'ingannano, signori*, you are mistaken, gentlemen (*lit.* you deceive yourselves); *chi può considerarsi felice?* Who can consider himself happy?

**134.** The following tenses show how the reflexive pronouns should be used throughout the conjugation.

#### PRESENT INDICATIVE

(*io*) **mi sfórzo**, I exert myself  
(*tu*) **ti sfórzi**, (thou) you exert yourself  
(*egli, ella*) **si sfórza**, he or she exerts himself or herself  
(*nói*) **ci sforziámo**, we exert ourselves  
(*vói*) **vi sforzáte**, you exert yourselves  
(*églino, élleno*) **si sfórzano**, they exert themselves

#### FUTURE INDICATIVE

(*io*) **mi sforzerò**, I shall exert myself, etc.  
**ti sforzerái**  
**si sforzerà**  
**ci sforzerémo**  
**vi sforzeréte**  
**si sforzeránno**

**135.** Compound tenses of reflexive verbs are formed with the auxiliary **essere**, and the reflexive pronoun is always placed before the auxiliary.

Ex.: *mi sono sbagliato*, I was mistaken; *ti sei vestito* you dressed yourself.

**136.** If the emphatic forms **stesso**, **stessa**, self, and **stessi**, **stesse**, selves, are used, the reflexive pronoun is then a disjunctive one, and the auxiliary **avere** is used instead of **essere**.

Ex.: *ho colpito me stesso*, I struck myself (much more emphatic than: *mi sono colpito*).

**137.** Some Italian verbs are used only reflexively, and often the reflexive construction (in the third person singular and plural) is used instead of the passive.

Ex.: **pentirsi**, to repent; **vergognarsi**, to be ashamed (always reflexive).

<p><i>queste riviste si pubblicano in Italia</i> for: <i>queste riviste sono pubblicate in Italia</i></p>	}	<p>these reviews are published in Italy.</p>
---	---	--

NOTE: It may be observed that the reflexive construction is perhaps preferable to the passive when the verb implies an habitual action.

**138.** A reflexive verb may also imply a reciprocal action.

Ex.: *si confortano*, they console themselves *or* they console one another.

However, when the reciprocal meaning is not clear enough or emphasis is required, properly inflected forms of **l'uno** and **l'altro** may be added (see § 103), but frequently the invariable adverbial phrase **a vicenda** or the expression **fra di loro** (*lit.* among themselves) is used.

Ex.: *si odiano l'un l'altro*, they hate one another; *si rispettano a vicenda*, they respect one another.



NOTE: The plural forms of *l'uno* and *l'altro* (*gli uni, gli altri*) indicate reciprocal action among many.

### IMPERSONAL VERBS

**139.** Impersonal verbs in Italian are conjugated without pronouns, and their conjugation is limited to the *infinitive*, the *two participles* and the *third person singular* of all other tenses.

Ex.: *piovere*, to rain; *piove*, it rains; *tuona*, it thunders; *nevicherà*, it will snow; *è nevicato* or *ha nevicato*, it has snowed.

**140.** The following verbs are used impersonally:

*parére*, to seem (*páre*, it seems; *paréva*, it seemed, etc.).  
*bastáre*, to be enough (*básta*, it is enough; *basterà*, it will be enough).

*conveníre*, to be fitting (*conviéne*, it is fitting, etc.).

*bisognáre*, to be necessary (*bisógna*, it is necessary, etc.).

**141.** The irregular verb **fare** (to do, to make) is often used impersonally in expressions describing the weather, temperature, etc.

Ex.: *fa bel tempo*, it is fine weather; *fa caldo*, it is warm; *fa freddo*, it is cold; *si fa tardi*, it is getting late.

### EXERCISE XXIV

#### VOCABULARY

**contentársi**, to be satisfied.

**díce**, says.

**dimenticársi**, to forget.

**mancáre**, to miss.

**meravigliársi**, to wonder.

**rallegrársi**, to rejoice.

**ricordársi (di)**, to remember.

**svegliársi**, to awake.

- A. — 1. Chi si contenta gode, dice un proverbio italiano.  
 2. Stamane mi sono svegliato per tempo. 3. Mi rallegro

di vederti in buona salute. 4. Ci siamo aiutati a vicenda, ma nessuno dei due ha copiato il lavoro dell' altro. 5. Si ricordi di non mancare all' appello la volta ventura. 6. Fa un po' freddo oggi, e forse nevierà. 7. Non Le pare di essersi sbagliata nei Suoi calcoli? 8. L'arancio e il limone si trovano soltanto nei paesi dove fa sempre caldo. 9. Si fa tardi e non mi sono ancora vestito per il concerto. 10. Il «Corriere della Sera» (Evening Courier), uno dei migliori giornali d'Italia, si pubblica a Milano.

B. — 1. Wolves do not eat each other. 2. I think (use *credere*) he will repent of (*di*) what (§ 87) he has done. 3. I wonder that he has (*pres. subj.*) not come yet. 4. It was very cold this morning when I left (*preterit* of *partire*; insert *di*) home. 5. Will it snow to-day? — I hope not (*di no*). 6. The most important newspapers in (§ 44) this country are published in the large cities of the East. 7. How<sup>1</sup> glad<sup>3</sup> I would be<sup>2</sup> if the weather were (*imp. subj.*) fine to-morrow. 8. It seems to me that this room is (*pres. subj.*) not well ventilated. 9. Do not forget (*3d person sing. imperative*) to (*di*) come and (omit and insert *a*) see me soon. 10. Remember (*3d person sing. imperative*) then that we expect you (*L'* before the verb) this week.

## LESSON XXV

### IRREGULAR VERBS

**142.** No attempt is made in the following lessons to present a scientifically devised treatment of the irregular verb. This is in order to avoid the confusion that any such treatment usually creates in the mind of the beginner. Hence, only a few irregular verbs from each of the three conjugations are taken up separately, and the student is expected to supplement these lessons with a careful study of the irregular verbs given at end of the grammar.

**143.** The following remarks will facilitate the understanding of the irregular verb.

1. A verb is irregular when departing from the regular conjugation either by changing the stem otherwise than stated in § 124 and 125, or by changing both the stem and the termination.

2. In the conjugation of derivatives, the stress of the simple verbs usually remains unchanged.

3. The irregularities in the preterit are practically always confined to three persons only, namely, *first* and *third person singular* and *third person plural*.

4. The only irregular verbs of the first conjugation are **andáre**, to go; **dáre**, to give; **stáre**, to stand, stay; **fáre**, to do, make, and several of their derivatives. The verb **fare** is here classed as an irregular verb of the first conjugation on account of its ending. **Fare**, however, is but a contracted form of the obsolete **fácere** (*2d conjugation*) of which

the stem **fac-** occurs frequently in many forms (see § 147). All other irregular verbs belong either to the second or third conjugation.

5. Compound verbs are conjugated like their simple verbs (exceptions will be often indicated).

6. *All tenses not given are regular.*

7. *Irregular forms are given in heavy types.* Rare forms are usually omitted.

### IRREGULAR VERBS — FIRST CONJUGATION

**144.**

*Andáre*, to go

#### PRESENT INDICATIVE

**vádo** or **vo**, **vái**, **va**; **andiámo**, **andáte**, **vánno**.

#### PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

**váda** (throughout the singular); **andiámo**, **andiáte**, **vádano**.

#### FUTURE INDICATIVE

**andrò** (contracted from *anderò*, etc.), **andrái**, **andrà**; **andrémo**, **andréte**, **andránno**.

#### PRESENT CONDITIONAL

**andréi** (contracted from *anderéi*, etc.), **andrésti**, **andrébbe**; **andrémmo**, **andréste**, **andrébbero**.

#### IMPERATIVE

no first person, **va'**, **váda**; **andiámo**, **andáte**, **vádano**.

(Compound tenses are formed with **éssere**.)

NOTE 1. — **Andársene**, to go away, is conjugated reflexively.

Ex.: *me ne vado*, I go away, etc. Imperative (2d sing.): **váttene**, go away.

NOTE 2. — The verb **trasandáre**, when meaning *to neglect*, and **riandáre**, when meaning *to reconsider*, are both regular. If used with the meaning of *to pass over*, *to go*

*beyond* (*trasandare*), and *to go again* (*riandare*), both are conjugated like *andare*.

### 145. *Dáre*, to give

#### PRESENT INDICATIVE

do, dáí, dà; diámo, dáte, dánno.

#### PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

día (throughout the singular); diámo, diáte, díano *or* díeno.

#### IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

déssi, déssi, désse; déssimo, déste, déssero.

#### FUTURE INDICATIVE

darò, darái, darà; darémo, daréte, daránno.

#### PRESENT CONDITIONAL

daréi, darésti, darébbe; darémmo, daréste, darébbbero.

#### PRETERIT

diédi (*or* détti), désti, diéde (*or* détte *or* diè); démmo, déste, diédéro (*or* déttero).

#### IMPERATIVE

no first person, da', día; diámo, dáte, díano *or* díeno.

NOTE 1. — Only *ridáre*, to give again, restore, and *ad-dársi* (*refl.*), to perceive, are conjugated like *dare*.

NOTE 2. — The verbs in such English sentences as: "I will go *and* tell him," are rendered in Italian by a principal verb and a dependent infinitive, e.g., "*andrò a dirgli.*"

## EXERCISE XXV

### VOCABULARY

*andáre d'accórd*o, to agree.

A. — 1. Dove andavi ieri quando t'incontrai? 2. Ella è così appassionata per lo «sport» che trasanda persino i Suoi doveri di scuola. 3. Posso andarmene quando ho

finito il mio esame? 4. Le do la mia parola d'onore che nessuno ha parlato male di Lei. 5. Mi dia qualche cosa da mangiare. 6. La vita dei campi gli ha ridato la salute. 7. Perchè te ne vai così presto? 8. Se fa bel tempo andremo a fare (take) una passeggiata nel parco. 9. Come vanno gli affari? 10. Vada a parlargli e sentirà quello che Le dice.

B. — 1. He who gives promptly gives twice, says the proverb. 2. They agree like dog and cat. 3. He often goes away without saying (*inf.*) anything (*nulla*) to us. 4. So goes the world. 5. "How is business?" (see A, 9, above) is a very common question in America. 6. Go (*3d person sing. imperative*) and tell him that I cannot wait till (*fino a*) to-morrow. 7. This is all that (§ 84) I can give you. 8. Where shall you (omit) go next summer? 9. Give (*2d person pl.*) me something (insert *di*) good to (*da*) eat. 10. I wouldn't give more than two dollars for this pair of gloves.

## LESSON XXVI

### IRREGULAR VERBS (*Continued*)

**146.** *Stáre*, to stand, stay

#### PRESENT INDICATIVE

sto, stái, sta; stiámo, státe, stánno.

#### PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

stía (throughout the singular); stiámo, stiáte, stiano or stieno.

#### IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

stéssi, stéssi, stésse; stéssimo, stéste, stéssero.

#### FUTURE INDICATIVE

starò, starái, starà; starémo, staréte, staránno.

#### PRESENT CONDITIONAL

staréi, starésti, starébbe; starémmo, staréste, starébbero.

#### PRETERIT

stétti, stésti, stétte; stémmo, stéste, stéttero.

#### IMPERATIVE

no first person, sta', stía; stiámo, státe, stiano or stieno.

(Compound tenses are formed with *éssere*.)

NOTE 1. — The progressive construction is expressed in Italian by means of *stare* as auxiliary.

Ex.: *sto lavorando*, I am working; *stava scrivendo*, I was writing, etc.

NOTE 2. — *Contrastáre*, meaning *to deny, dispute*; *re-stáre*, to remain; *ostáre*, to oppose, hinder, and *instáre*, to be urgent, are regular. *Ristáre*, to cease, stop, is conju-

gated like **stare** and **sovrastáre**, to stand above *or* over, may be conjugated both as a regular verb or like **stare**.

**147.** *Fáre*, to do, make

PRESENT INDICATIVE

**fáccio** (*or fo*), **fái**, **fa**; **facciámo**, **fáte**, **fánno**.

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

**fáccia** (throughout the singular); **facciámo**, **facciáte**, **fácciano**.

IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

**facéssi**, **facéssi**, **facésse**; **facéssimo**, **facéste**, **facéssero**.

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE

**faceva**, **facevi**, **faceva**; **facevâmo**, **facevâte**, **facevano**.

FUTURE INDICATIVE

**farò**, **farái**, **farà**; **farémo**, **faréte**, **faránno**.

PRESENT CONDITIONAL

**faréi**, **farésti**, **farébbe**; **farémmo**, **faréste**, **farébbero**.

PRETERIT

**féci**, **facésti**, **féce**; **facémmo**, **facéste**, **fécero**.

IMPERATIVE

no first person, **fa'**, **fáccia**; **facciámo**, **fáte**, **fácciano**.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

**facéndo**.

PAST PARTICIPLE

**fátto**.

REMARK: The final vowel of verbs conjugated like **andare**, **dare**, **stare**, **fare** is accented on the first and third persons singular of the present indicative.

Ex.: **rivò**, I go again; **ridà**, he gives again, etc.

With compounds of **andare** and **fare**, however, no accent is required when the forms **vado** and **faccio** are used.

Ex.: **rifáccio**, I am doing again; **rivádo**, I go again.



## EXERCISE XXVI

## VOCABULARY

**assuefâre**, *refl.*, to accustom, adapt.

**confâre**, *refl.*, to agree with.

**fâre l'avvocato**, **il médico**, etc., to practise law, medicine, etc.

**fârla finîta**, to stop it.

**fâr(e) venîre**, to send for (*venire* is, of course, invariable).

**fâr(e) vîsita**, to pay a visit.

**rifâre**, to do again.

**sodisfâre**, to satisfy.

**sopraffâre**, to overpower.

**stâre (di câsa)**, to dwell.

stâre	{	béne,	{	well.
		mâle,		bad.

**stare per** (*and an infinitive*), to be about to, be on the point of.

A. — 1. Sono andato a stare in campagna perchè l'aria della città non mi (si) confaceva. 2. È quasi ora di farla finita, mi pare. 3. Non dimenticarti che ora sto di casa al numero 52, Via Indipendenza. 4. Faccia quello che crede, io me ne lavo le mani. 5. È vero che Suo fratello fa l'avvocato a New-York? 6. Intanto ch'Ella resta qui io vado a fare una visita a un signore che sta non molto lontano. 7. Il Suo lavoro non mi sodisfa; lo rifaccia. 8. Non mi sono ancora del tutto (quite) assuefatto al clima di questo paese, ma ora sto molto meglio di quando sono venuto. 9. Lei cerca di sopraffarmi colla forza, non colla ragione. 10. Come sta Ella oggi?

B. — 1. How is your friend to-day? 2. I sent for (*pret-erit*) the doctor many times (XXIII, B, 7) but the condition of the patient is always the same. 3. You will feel much better (§ 39, note) when you come back from the country. 4. I used to dwell (*imp. ind.*) in that street many years ago. 5. Try (*3d person sing. imperative*) to (*di*) adapt yourself to the customs of this country. 6. How long (see Voc.) shall you remain in Italy? 7. What can I do to (*per*) satisfy your desire? 8. I advise you to do this work again. 9. I was about to (*imp. ind.*) go out when you (use *Ella*) came (*venne*) to (*a*) see me. 10. I don't feel well enough to (*per*) come out to-night.

## LESSON XXVII

### IRREGULAR VERBS — SECOND CONJUGATION

**148.** *Potére*, to be able

PRESENT INDICATIVE

póssò, puòi, può; possiámo, potéte, póssono.

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

póssa (throughout the singular); possiámo, possiáte, póssano.

FUTURE INDICATIVE

potrò, potrái, potrà; potrémo, potréte, potránno.

PRESENT CONDITIONAL

potréi, potrésti, potrébbe; potrémmo, potréste, potrébbero.

**149.** *Sapére*,\* to know

PRESENT INDICATIVE

so, sái, sa; sappiámo, sapéte, sánno.

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

sáppia (throughout the singular); sappiámo, sappiáte, sáppiano.

FUTURE INDICATIVE

saprò, saprái, saprà; saprémo, sapréte, sapránno.

PRESENT CONDITIONAL

sapréi, saprésti, saprébbe; saprémmo, sapréste, saprébbero.

PRETERIT

séppi, sapésti, séppe; sapémmo, sapéste, séppero.

IMPERATIVE

no first person, sáppi, sáppia; no first person, sappiáte, sáppiano.

\* To know, when meaning *to be acquainted with*, is rendered by *conóscere* (see List of Irregular Verbs).

**150.***Vedére*, to see

## PRESENT INDICATIVE

védo *or* véggio, védi, véde; vediámo, vedéte, védono *or* véggono.

## PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

véda *or* végga (throughout the singular); vediámo *or* veggiámo, vediáte *or* veggíáte, védano *or* véggano.

## FUTURE INDICATIVE

vedrò, vedrái, vedrà; vedrémo, vedréte, vedránno.

## PRESENT CONDITIONAL

vedréi, vedrésti, vedrébbe; vedrémmo, vedréste, vedrébbero.

## PRETERIT

vídi, vedésti, víde; vedémmo, vedéste, vídero.

## IMPERATIVE

no first person, védi, véda; vediámo, vedéte, védano.  
(The irregular forms *vegga*, etc., are rare in the imperative.)

## PRESENT PARTICIPLE

vedéndo *or* veggéndo.

## PAST PARTICIPLE

vedúto *or* vísto.**151.***Rimanére*, to remain

## PRESENT INDICATIVE

rimángo, rimáni, rimáne; rimaniámo, rimanéte, rimángono.

## PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

rimánga (throughout the singular); rimaniámo, rimaniáte, rimángano.

## FUTURE INDICATIVE

rimarrò, rimarrái, rimarrà; rimarrémo, rimarréte, rimarránno.

## PRESENT CONDITIONAL

rimarréi, rimarrésti, rimarrébbe; rimarrémmo, rimarréste, rimarrébb-  
bero.

## PRETERIT

rimási, rimanésti, rimáse; rimanémmo, rimanéste, rimásero.

## IMPERATIVE

no first person, rimáni, **rimánga**; rimaniámo, rimanéte, **rimángano**.

## PAST PARTICIPLE

**rimásto** (*or rimáso*).

(Compound tenses are formed with **éssere**.)

## EXERCISE XXVII

## VOCABULARY

**prevedére**, to foresee } These two verbs are not contracted in the  
**provvedére**, to provide } future and conditional.  
**rivedére**, to see again.

A. — 1. Potresti venire a casa mia stasera verso le otto?  
 2. Saprò io cosa fare in caso di necessità. 3. A rivederla (good-by), signor White, mi dispiace (I am sorry) assai di non poter rimanere con Lei qualche giorno ancora, ma Lei sa benissimo che i miei (§ 72) mi aspettano a casa. 4. Vedrò più tardi quello che posso fare per Lei. 5. Ho fatto tutto quello che potevo per riuscire nel mio intento, ma chi avrebbe preveduto tante difficoltà? 6. Vedo che non sapete la lezione d'oggi e questo è male perchè non potrete far nulla (anything) senza i verbi. 7. Ieri sono rimasto in casa tutto il giorno perchè non stavo bene. 8. Dove mi hai visto stamane? 9. Non so se potrò venire stasera a casa Sua. 10. Le sarò tanto grato s'Ella mi provvederà i mezzi di continuare nei miei studi.

B. — 1. I doubt whether (*che*) he can (*pres. subj.*) accept such conditions. 2. I know positively that your friends are ready to help you. 3. Could (*condit.*) you do me this favor? 4. No one can serve you better. 5. I hope you will remain with us at dinner. 6. When he saw (*preterit*) that he could not (*imp. ind.*) convince him, he went away (*preterit*). 7. I do not see how you can

(*pres. subj.*) succeed. 8. I cannot understand why you should find (*pres. subj.*) this lesson so hard. 9. I would do anything (§ 111) for you, but I do not see how I can (*pres. subj.*) help you this time. 10. I shall remain in the (omit) city three or four days.

## LESSON XXVIII

### IRREGULAR VERBS (*Continued*)

**152.**

*Chiedere*, to ask (for)

#### PRESENT INDICATIVE

chiédo *or* **chiéggo**, chiédi, chiéde; chiediámo, chiedéte, chiédono *or* **chiéggono**.

#### PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

chiéda *or* **chiégga** (throughout the singular); chiediámo, chiediate, chiédano *or* **chiéggano**.

#### PRETERIT

chiési, chiedésti, **chiése**; chiedémmo, chiedéste, **chiésero**.

#### IMPERATIVE

no first person, chiédi, chiéda *or* **chiégga**; chiediámo, chiediate, chiédano *or* **chiéggano**.

#### PAST PARTICIPLE

**chiésto**.

**153.**

*Cogliere*, to pick, gather

#### PRESENT INDICATIVE

cólgo, cógli, cógli; **cogliámo** (*or* **colghiámo**), cogliéte, **cólgono**.

#### PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

**cólga** (throughout the singular); **cogliámo** (*or* **colghiámo**), **cogliáte**, **cólgano**.

#### PRETERIT

**cólsi**, cogliésti, **cólse**; cogliémmo, cogliéste, **cólsero**.

#### IMPERATIVE

no first person, cógli, **cólga**; **cogliámo**, cogliéte, **cólgano**.

#### PAST PARTICIPLE

**cólto**.

NOTE: The irregular forms **corrò**, etc., of the future, and **correi**, etc., of the conditional, are poetical.

**154.** *Spégnere*, to extinguish, blow out (light); *refl.* to go out.

## PRESENT INDICATIVE

**spéngo**, **spégni**, **spégne**; **spegniámo**, **spegnéte**, **spéngono**.

## PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

**spénga** (throughout the singular); **spegniámo**, **spegniáte**, **spéngano**.

## PRETERIT

**spénsi**, **spegnésti**, **spénse**; **spegnémmo**, **spegnéste**, **spénsero**.

## IMPERATIVE

no first person, **spégni**, **spénga**; **spegniámo**, **spegnéte**, **spéngano**.

## PAST PARTICIPLE

**spénto**.

**155.**

*Scrivere*, to write

## PRETERIT

**scrissi**, **scrivésti**, **scrísse**; **scrivémmo**, **scrivéste**, **scríssero**.

## PAST PARTICIPLE

**scritto**.

**156.**

*Prendere*, to take

## PRETERIT

**prési**, **prendésti**, **prése**; **prendémmo**, **prendéste**, **présero**.

## PAST PARTICIPLE

**préso**.

NOTE: The irregularities of many verbs of the second conjugation stressed on the antepenultimate syllable are practically confined to the preterit and past participle (see Table of Irregular Verbs).

## EXERCISE XXVIII

## VOCABULARY

concéssò, granted.

distógliere, to dissuade.

richiédere, to require.

scégliere, to choose.

sciógliere, to dissolve.

tógliere, to take away.

A. — 1. Non mi chieda il nome di chi ha scritto questo articolo, non posso dirglielo. 2. Dove ha colto questi bei fiori, signorina? 3. Non so ancora quale sceglierò di tutti i candidati. 4. È molto tardi perchè i lumi delle strade sono già tutti spenti. 5. Quante ore di studio si richiedono (§ 137) in questo corso? 6. I popoli non progrediscono quando si toglie loro la libertà. 7. La polizia ha preso tutte le misure necessarie per evitare possibili conflitti. 8. Il ministro della marina chiederà i fondi necessari per la costruzione di nuove navi da guerra. 9. Scrivimi spesso quando sei in Italia. 10. Spero ch'Ella non prenderà queste cose sul serio.

B. — 1. I hope you (use *Ella*) will write to me often during your (§ 58) trip. 2. You will dissolve this pill in half<sup>2</sup> a<sup>1</sup> glass of water. 3. What (§ 87) you ask cannot be granted. 4. The fire will soon go out (§ 154) if you don't go and (a) get (*inf.*) some (§ 8, 5) wood. 5. I would write to him if I knew (*imp. subj.*) his address. 6. Have you chosen any one of the candidates for this position? 7. I shall take the first train to-morrow morning. 8. I will do all (insert 'that which') I can to (*per*) dissuade him from his project. 9. Go and (a) pick (*inf.*) some roses for the young lady. 10. Blow out (2d person sing. imperative) the lamp and let us go to bed.



## LESSON XXIX

### IRREGULAR VERBS — THIRD CONJUGATION

**157.** *Venire*, to come

#### PRESENT INDICATIVE

**vengo, vieni, viene; veniamo, venite, vengono.**

#### PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

**venga** (throughout the singular); **veniamo, veniate, vengano.**

#### FUTURE INDICATIVE

**verrò, verrai, verrà; verrémo, verrete, verranno.**

#### PRESENT CONDITIONAL

**verrei, verresti, verrebbe; verremmo, verreste, verrebbero.**

#### PRETERIT

**venni, venisti, venne; venimmo, veniste, vennero.**

#### IMPERATIVE

no first person, **vieni, venga; veniamo, venite, vengano.**

#### PAST PARTICIPLE

**venuto.**

(Compound tenses are formed with *essere*.)

**158.** *Dire*, to say, tell

#### PRESENT INDICATIVE

**dico, dici, dice; diciamo, dite, dicono.**

#### PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

**dica** (throughout the singular); **diciamo, diciate, dicano.**

#### IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

**dicessi, dicessi, dicésse; dicéssimo, dicéste, dicéssero.**

## IMPERFECT INDICATIVE

**dicéva, dicévi, dicéva; dicevâmo, dicevâte, dicévano.**

## PRETERIT

**díssi, dicésti, dísse; dicémmo, dicéste, díssero.**

## IMPERATIVE

no first person, **dí', díca; diciâmo, díte, dícano.**

## PRESENT PARTICIPLE

**dicéndo.**

## PAST PARTICIPLE

**détto.**

NOTE 1. — It is on account of its ending in **-ire**, that **dire** is assigned to the third conjugation. **Dire** is but a contracted form of the obsolete **dicere** (*2d conjugation*), of which the stem **dic-** is evident in many of the foregoing forms.

NOTE 2. — **Benedíre**, to bless, and **maledíre**, to execrate, follow **dire**, but the forms **benedíva** and **maledíva**, etc., of the imperfect indicative are also used. Both verbs may be conjugated either like **dire** or like **sentire** (see § 129) in the preterit.

**159.     *Salíre*, to mount, rise, come or go up**

## PRESENT INDICATIVE

**sálgo, sáli, sále; sagliâmo, salíte, sálgono.**

## PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

**sálga (throughout the singular); sagliâmo, sagliâte, sálgano.**

## PRETERIT

**sálii (or sálsi), salísti, salí (or sálse); salímmo, salíste, salírono (or sálsero).**

## IMPERATIVE

no first person, **sálii, sálga; sagliâmo, salíte, sálgano.**

(Compound tenses are formed with **éssere**.)

NOTE: **Salire** may also be conjugated like **pulire** (see § 130) in the *present indicative*, *present subjunctive*, and *imperative*.

160.

*Aprire*, to open

PRETERIT

aprii or apérsi, apristi, apri or apérse; aprímmo, apríste, aprírono or apérsero.

PAST PARTICIPLE

apérto

NOTE: In all other tenses *aprire* follows *sentire*, § 129.

## EXERCISE XXIX

## VOCABULARY

contradire, to contradict.

convenire, to suit, be convenient.

coprire, to cover (like *aprire*).

divenire, to become.

offrire, to offer (like *aprire*).

predire, to foretell, predict.

A. — 1. Vieni presto a trovarmi, sai che sono sempre contento di vederti. 2. Dica la Sua opinione liberamente, Ella sa come stanno le cose. 3. Mi dica Lei quello che conviene fare in questa circostanza. 4. Chi ha aperto quella finestra? 5. Mi hanno detto che il pallone salirà oggi verso le quattro. 6. Le riviste commerciali predicono un'era di prosperità. 7. Uno che contraddice sempre nella conversazione diviene insopportabile. 8. Si copra bene perchè fuori fa molto freddo. 9. Ditemi quale sconto potete offrirmi. 10. Venga a casa mia stasera se Le è possibile; ho a parlarle di cose importantissime.

B. — 1. Mr. Brown came (*preterit*) to see me yesterday about this matter. 2. The letter-carrier will not come tomorrow because it is a (omit) holiday. 3. I found (*preterit*) the door open last night when I came (*preterit*; insert *a*) home. 4. Mr. Adams told (*preterit*) me that he would come to the reception to-night. 5. The witness has contradicted himself (§ 135) several times (*pl. of volta*) during the trial. 6. I am glad to (*di*) offer (to) you (§ 61) the hospitality of my home. 7. I hope these terms will suit you (*conj. pron. Le*). 8. I do not understand what (§ 87) he says. 9. The reasons (§ 84) you offer are not satisfactory.

## LESSON XXX

### IRREGULAR VERBS (*Continued*)

**161.**

*Moríre*, to die

#### PRESENT INDICATIVE

muóio (*or* muóro), muóri, muóre; moriámo, moríte, muóiono.

#### PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

muóia (*or* muóra), (throughout the singular); moriámo, moriáte, muóiano.

#### FUTURE INDICATIVE

morriò, morrái, morrà; morrémo, morréte, morráno. (Also regular: morirò, etc.)

#### PRESENT CONDITIONAL

morréi, morrésti, morrébbe; morrémmo, morréste, morrébbero. (Also regular: morirei, etc.)

#### IMPERATIVE

no first person, muóri, muóia (*or* muóra); moriámo, moríte, muóiano.

#### PAST PARTICIPLE

mórto.

(Compound tenses are formed with *éssere*.)

**162.**

*Uscíre*, to go *or* come out

#### PRESENT INDICATIVE

ésko, ésci, ésce; usciámo, uscíte, éscano.

#### PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

ésca (throughout the singular); usciámo, uscíte, éscano.

#### IMPERATIVE

no first person, ésci, éasca; usciámo, uscíte, éscano.

(Compound tenses are formed with *éssere*.)

**163.***Apparíre*, to appear

## PRESENT INDICATIVE

apparíscō *or* **appáio**, apparísci, apparísce *or* appáre; appariámo, apparíte, apparíscono *or* **appáiono**.

## PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

apparísca *or* **appáia** (throughout the singular); appariámo, appariáte, apparíscano *or* **appáiano**.

## PRETERIT

apparíi, **appársi** *or* **appárvi**, apparísti, apparì, **appárse** *or* **appárve**; apparím̄mo, apparíte, apparírono, **appársero** *or* **appárvero**.

## IMPERATIVE

no first person, apparísci, apparísca *or* **appáia**; appariámo, apparíte, apparíscano *or* **appáiano**.

## PAST PARTICIPLE

apparíto *or* **appárso**.

(Compound tenses are formed with *éssere*.)

NOTE: **Sparíre**, to disappear, is conjugated like **apparire**, except that the forms in *-isco*, etc., are practically the only ones used.\*

**164.***Udíre*, to hear

## PRESENT INDICATIVE

ódo, ódi, óde; udiámo, udíte, ódono.

## PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

óda (throughout the singular); udiámo, udiáte, **ódano**.

## IMPERATIVE

no first person, ódi, óda; udiámo, udíte, **ódano**.

\* In the Preterit the forms **spársi**, **spárse**, **spársero** are *not* used, however, as these are also forms of the Preterit of **spárgere**, to scatter.

## EXERCISE XXX

## VOCABULARY

**riuscire**, to be successful, succeed.

**scomparire**, to disappear.

A. — 1. Il signor Neri è uscito poco fa e non ritornerà prima delle cinque. 2. Faccia come Le dico io e tutte le difficoltà spariscono. 3. Il Suo piano riuscirà certamente s'Ella avrà la pazienza d'aspettare il momento opportuno. 4. Questa notizia è apparsa in tutti i giornali d'oggi. 5. Le racconterò una storiella che La farà morir dalle risa. 6. Ho udito uno strano rumore ieri notte; l'hai udito anche tu? 7. Durante le lotte dell'indipendenza italiana molti patrioti furono esigliati e molti morirono sul patibolo. 8. Il signor Adams esce regolarmente dal suo ufficio tutti i giorni alle sei. 9. Con tutti i Suoi argomenti Ella non riesce a convincermi. 10. Nella famosa ritirata di Russia, il fiore dell'esercito di Napoleone I morì di privazioni e di stenti.

B. — 1. Dante Alighieri died (*preterit*) at Ravenna in 1321. 2. I shall go out to take a walk this evening if the weather is good. 3. What a (§ 97) beautiful speech we heard last night at the meeting of the society! 4. No one has yet succeeded in (*a*) reaching (*inf.*) the south<sup>2</sup> pole<sup>1</sup>. 5. The cashier of the bank has disappeared and no one knows where he is (*pres. subj.*). 6. The last edition of this newspaper comes out at eight o'clock. 7. Your friend is a man that usually succeeds in everything (insert 'that which') he does. 8. I will tell you to-morrow in what paper the news has appeared. 9. You cannot go out through (*da*) that door. 10. Sounds could (*condit.* of *potere*) not be heard (§ 137; the *refl. pron. si*, precedes the *condit.*) without air.

## LESSON XXXI

### INTERROGATIVE AND NEGATIVE SENTENCES

**165.** In interrogative sentences the subject pronoun is often omitted, but in speaking, the inflection of the voice will invariably tell whether the sentence is interrogative or not. Such inflection is more pronounced in Italian than in English.

Ex.: *sei andato a teatro ieri sera?* Did you go to the theater last night?

**166.** When the subject pronoun is expressed, it is placed after the verb, and in compound tenses usually between the auxiliary and the past participle, and sometimes after the past participle.

Ex.: *come puoi tu dire una tal cosa?* How can you say such a thing?

<i>ha Ella veduto il signor Bruni?</i>	} Did you see Mr. Bruni?
or: <i>ha veduto Ella il signor Bruni?</i>	
or: <i>ha veduto il signor Bruni Ella?</i>	

**167.** When the subject of an interrogative sentence is a noun, this may be placed according to the foregoing rule, but in a short sentence especially, it stands either first or last.

Ex.: <i>è stato molto tempo in Italia</i>	} Did your father stay long in Italy?
<i>il tuo babbo?</i>	
or: <i>il tuo babbo è stato molto tempo</i> <i>in Italia?</i>	

**168.** The real negative particle in Italian is **non**, not, which precedes the verb or any other word taken negatively.

Ex.: *non ho studiato molto oggi*, I have not studied much to-day; *hai finito il tuo lavoro?* *Non ancora*, have you finished your work? Not yet.

**169.** The negative adverb **no**, no (not used with verbs), is either employed alone or placed after any word taken negatively.

Ex.: *ha Ella accettato l'invito?* — *No*, have you accepted the invitation? — *No*; *lo crede Lei?* — *Io no, ma molti non esitano a crederlo*, do you believe it? I do not (*lit.* 'not I'), but many do not hesitate to believe it.

**170.** The negative **non**, is often used with other adverbs either to intensify the negation or simply for emphasis. The most common of these added forms are given below:

**non** . . . **mai**, never.

**non** . . . **punto**, not . . . at all.

**non** . . . **più**, no more, no longer, **non** . . . **mica**, not . . . at all (*lit.* not . . . any more. not a bit).

**non** . . . **affatto**, not . . . at all.

Ex.: *non ho mai sentito un oratore più facondo*, I never heard a more eloquent orator; *non l'ho più riveduta*, I have seen her no more.

**171.** **Mai**, as a general rule is not negative unless accompanied by **non**; yet it may have a negative force if used absolutely. When used in interrogative sentences, **mai** is the equivalent of English *ever*.

Ex.: *ha mai visto un' opera Lei?* — *Mai*, Have you ever seen an opera? — Never.

**172.** **Non**, followed by **che** has often the meaning of *only*, *but*, and **che** always precedes the word it modifies.



Ex.: **non ho che pochi dollari da spendere**, I have but a few dollars to spend.

NOTE: The negative correlative forms **nè . . . nè**, neither . . . nor, require **non** before the verb.

Ex.: **non voglio nè l'uno nè l'altro**, I wish neither one nor the other.

### EXERCISE XXXI

(The remaining exercises of this grammar are based largely on irregular verbs contained in the list given at the end of the grammar.)

A. — 1. Ha letto il giornale di stamane, Lei? 2. Non piove quasi mai in questa regione durante l'estate. 3. Il medico mi ha detto che l'ammalato non ha che pochi giorni da (to) vivere. 4. Non ti sei ancora persuaso che conchiudendo un contratto simile corri il pericolo di perdere tutto quello che hai? 5. Non c'è più tempo da (to) perdere; s'Ella aspetta ancora un po' non arriverà più alla stazione in tempo. 6. La cosa non è mica così facile come credi tu. 7. Rifletta bene prima di decidersi e non abbia punto fretta. 8. Le assicuro che non ho mai espresso l'opinione a cui Ella allude. 9. Non mi rincresce affatto d'essermi assunto questa responsabilità. 10. Non s'è ancora deciso nè per l'uno nè per l'altro di questi progetti.

B. — 1. I assure you that he has never expressed any desire to (*di*) accept this place. 2. When have you decided to (*di*) go? 3. Have you obtained his permission? 4. Have you ever lived in (*a*) Boston? 5. He has but a few dollars to (*da*) give me this time. 6. Why don't you persuade him to do otherwise? 7. I am sorry (insert 'that') you are not acquainted with (*pres. subj.*) him (*conj. pron.*). 8. It does not rain at all. 9. Have you closed the door of my office? 10. Do not try (*3d person sing. imperative*) any more to translate from (the) English without consulting (*inf.*) the vocabulary.

## LESSON XXXII

### MOODS AND TENSES

#### THE INDICATIVE (MOOD)

**173.** The tenses of the indicative are used in Italian practically in the same manner as in English. The following remarks, however, will be of considerable help to the student.

**174.** The present indicative is often used in Italian to indicate that a certain action begun in the past still continues.

Ex.: <i>ti aspetto da due giorni</i>	} I have been waiting
or: <i>ti sto aspettando da due giorni</i>	
or: <i>sono due giorni che ti aspetto</i>	
	for you two days.

#### PAST INDEFINITE

**175.** The past indefinite which is formed with the present indicative of an auxiliary and the past participle, is more widely used in Italian than in English, especially in familiar style and conversation. This tense is employed mainly with reference to a past action that has occurred at a time not yet elapsed.

Ex.: *hai saputo la lezione oggi?* Did you know your lesson to-day? *ho fatto dei progressi notevoli nei miei studi quest'anno,* I made (some) remarkable progress in my studies this year.

#### IMPERFECT INDICATIVE

**176.** The following distinctions, if properly observed, will enable the student *largely* to avoid confusion as to the use of the two past tenses: the *imperfect indicative* and the *preterit*.

**177.** The imperfect indicative expresses in the past:

1. Habitual or continued action.

Ex.: *lo incontravo tutti i giorni*, I used to meet him every day.

2. Two or more actions taking place at the same time.

Ex.: *quando eravamo in campagna ci divertivamo assai*, when we were in the country we enjoyed ourselves greatly.

3. An action interrupted by another (usually expressed with the preterit).

Ex.: *arrivai alla stazione quando il treno partiva*, I reached the station when the train was leaving; *egli mi vide mentre passeggiavo nel parco*, he saw me while I was walking in the park.

NOTE: The English auxiliary *was* followed by a gerund, or *used to* followed by an infinitive, should always be rendered with the imperfect indicative.

### PRETERIT

**178.** The preterit is the great historical tense and expresses in the past:

1. An action occurring at or within a fixed time entirely elapsed.

Ex.: *la riunione ebbe luogo stamane*, the meeting took place this morning; *Garibaldi fu l'eroe popolare dell'indipendenza italiana*, Garibaldi was the popular hero of the Italian independence.

2. The preterit is also used instead of the past anterior to express the first in order of time of two consecutive actions when it is introduced by conjunctions such as **appena**, **tosto che**, as soon as, **dopo che**, after, **quando**, when.

Ex.: *quando gli dissi che studiavo l'italiano mi domandò se lo sapevo parlare*, when I told him that I was studying Italian, he asked me if I knew how to speak it.

### EXERCISE XXXII

A. — 1. Discutiamo da due ore e non ci siamo ancora messi d'accordo. 2. L'ultima volta che lo vidi, il povero uomo sembrava affranto dal dolore. 3. Quando gli esposi le mie ragioni, si persuase d'avermi giudicato con severità. 4. Pochi anni fa il signor Adams era molto ricco, ma in seguito a speculazioni azzardose, perdette tutto quello che possedeva. 5. I Romani concedevano il diritto di cittadinanza anche agli stranieri. 6. Leone X protesse le lettere e le arti in Italia. 7. Negli ultimi venticinque anni lo sviluppo industriale degli Stati Uniti ha raggiunto delle proporzioni gigantesche. 8. Quando Napoleone I giunse davanti a Mosca (Moscow), la città ardeva già da parecchi giorni. 9. A quel tempo non conoscevo alcuna persona influente e perciò dovetti abbandonare il mio progetto. 10. Il suo rifiuto mi sorprese specialmente perchè lo ritenevo uno dei miei migliori amici.

B. — 1. He has been reading for (*da*) over two hours. 2. I am very grateful to him (*conj. pron.*) for the services (§ 84) he has rendered me (*dat. conj. pron.*). 3. It has been raining for (*da*) at least an hour. 4. How much (see Voc.) did you spend to make all these purchases? 5. Where did you put the book that I was reading a little while ago? 6. When I was in the (omit) country I used to go (insert *a*) fishing (*inf.*) nearly every day. 7. He didn't want to go because it was raining hard. 8. I must say that in this matter he conducted himself like (*da*) a (omit) gentleman. 9. We used to play together when we were boys. 10. While he was running the poor boy fell and hurt his (§ 71) leg.

## LESSON XXXIII

### THE INDICATIVE (*Continued*)

#### PLUPERFECT AND PAST ANTERIOR

**179.** The pluperfect is formed with the imperfect indicative of an auxiliary and the past participle: **era stato**, I had been. The auxiliary of the past anterior is the preterit: **fui stato**, I had been. Both tenses indicate that a certain action took place before another also past. Yet, the action expressed by the pluperfect precedes by an indefinite period of time, while in the case of the past anterior the action takes place immediately before the other. Such difference is especially emphasized by conjunctions of time like **quando**, when, **dopo che**, **tosto che**, **appena**, as soon as, which always introduce the past anterior.

Ex.: **avevo già pensato a questo quando mi giunse la tua lettera**, I had already thought of this when your letter reached me; **tosto che l'ebbe veduto andò a salutarlo**, as soon as he had seen him he went to salute him.

#### FUTURE

**180.** The future is sometimes used as an imperative, and often to express an idea of approximation or probability.

Ex.: **farete quello che vi dico**, you shall do what I tell you; **quel signore avrà trent' anni**, that gentleman is (about, perhaps) thirty years old.

#### FUTURE ANTERIOR

**181.** The future anterior is formed with the future indicative of an auxiliary and the past participle: **sarò stato**,

I shall have been. This tense indicates that a future action will take place before another also future.

Ex.: *se avrete studiato con amore, gli esami non vi intimoriranno*, if you shall have studied faithfully, the examinations will not scare you.

NOTE: The future anterior, like the simple future, expresses approximation.

Ex.: *l'avrò detto Loro cento volte d'essere diligenti*, I must have told you a hundred times to be diligent.

### IMPERATIVE (MOOD)

**182.** Properly speaking the imperative has but two persons: second person singular and plural. The third person singular and first and third plural are taken from the present subjunctive.

Ex.: *apri la porta*, open (thou) the door; *scrivetemi spesso*, write (you) to me often; *mi faccia un favore*, do me a favor; *andiamo via*, let us go away; *vadano pure*, let them go, or you may go (**pure** emphasizes **vadano**).

NOTE: A negative imperative of the second person singular is replaced by an infinitive (see § 114, note).

Ex.: *non ti fermare*, do not stop.

### EXERCISE XXXIII

A. — 1. Cercai in ogni modo di dissuaderlo, ma fu inutile perchè (egli) aveva deciso di partire. 2. Appena l'oratore ebbe finito di parlare, molti andarono a stringergli la mano. 3. Per la volta ventura Loro mi tradurranno questi due esercizi. 4. Quando sarò ritornato dal passeggio studierò la lezione. 5. Fra un' ora avrò messo in ordine ogni cosa, spero. 6. I Gracchi caddero in odio al partito

aristocratico perchè avevano difeso strenuamente gl'interessi del popolo. 7. Saranno le dieci tutt' al più (at most). 8. Gli inquilini avevano già spento il fuoco quando giunsero i pompieri. 9. Legga le Sue lezioni d'italiano ad alta voce se vuol migliorare la Sua pronuncia. 10. Gli dica pure quel che penso di lui.

B. — 1. I had already translated several pages of this book when you came to see me. 2. As soon as I noticed that he was trying (use *cercare*) to (*d'*) deceive me, I broke all (§ 104) connection with him. 3. In (§ 52) a couple of weeks we shall have finished the grammar. 4. Never judge by appearances (XXI, B, 8). 5. Try to (*di*) read at least ten pages of your Reader for the next time (see A, 3, above). 6. Your friend must have (*future*) spent a lot of money to build his new cottage. 7. Let us not lose any (omit) time or we shall miss (insert 'to') the roll-call. 8. What had he done to (*per*) deserve such a punishment? 9. Answer soon and let (*imperative third sing. of fare*) me (*conj. pron.*) know when you (*Ella* should be used) will come to see us in the (omit) country. 10. When I reached (insert 'to') the theater, the performance had (*era*) already begun.

## LESSON XXXIV

### THE SUBJUNCTIVE

It is needless to say that the following treatment of the subjunctive is not meant to be exhaustive, and only such rules are given as are of capital importance to the beginner.

**183.** The use of the subjunctive is almost entirely limited to the subordinate clause of a sentence, and usually conveys an idea of *uncertainty* or *probability*.

**184.** The subjunctive is used in subordinate clauses:

1. After verbs or phrases expressing *desire, command, necessity, permission, prohibition*.

Ex.: *desidero ch'Ella venga con me*, I wish you to come (*lit.* that you come) with me; *voglio che vengano per tempo*, I want you to come early; *Ella ha bisogno che alcuno La aiuti*, you need some one to help you; *permette (Ella) ch'io vada?* do you allow me to go?

2. After verbs or expressions of *feeling* or *emotion*.

Ex.: *mi dispiace ch'Ella non stia bene*; I am sorry you don't feel well; *sono contento ch'egli ritorni fra noi*, I am glad he is coming back among us; *sono sorpreso ch'Ella non capisca*, I am surprised that you do not understand.

3. After verbs implying *fear, belief, doubt*.

Ex.: *temo che accada qualche disgrazia*, I fear that some misfortune may happen; *credi ch'io abbia*



*ragione?* Do you think I am right? *dubito ch'egli pensi a me*, I doubt whether he thinks of me.

NOTE: In subordinate clauses, a future action is usually expressed by the subjunctive when such future action is viewed merely as a possibility or probability. If there is no uncertainty, the future indicative is used.

Ex.: *credo che piova oggi*, I think that it will rain to-day; *credo che pioverà oggi*, I think that it will (certainly) rain to-day.

4. After impersonal verbs or expressions.

Ex.: *sembra ch'Ella non ascolti*, it seems that you are not listening; *è necessario che si mettano a studiare di lena*, it is necessary that you begin to study eagerly.

5. After an imperative.

Ex.: *ditegli che venga stasera*, tell him to come this evening.

6. After interrogative and negative verbs when the statement of the subordinate clause is uncertain.

Ex.: *crede Ella che si possa fare?* Do you think that it could be done? *egli non ammette che sia vero*, he does not admit that it is true.

7. After relative pronouns unless the action is stated with certainty.

Ex.: *cerco uno che parli italiano*, I am looking for some one who speaks Italian; *gli dica una parola che lo rassicuri*, speak a word (to him) that may reassure him.

8. After many conjunctions, of which the most important are:

benchè	}	although	purchè, provided
sebbene			posto che
quantunque			dato che
acciocchè	}	so that	salvo che, unless
affinchè			senza che, without
perchè			prima che, before
in modo che			

Ex.: *benchè il tempo sia cattivo uscirò*, though the weather is bad I will go out; *lo compero purchè sia in buono stato*, I buy it provided it is in good condition; *andrò solo, salvo ch'Ella non voglia accompagnarli*, I will go alone, unless you wish to accompany me.

9. After exclamative or optative expressions.

Ex.: *peccato (che) tu giunga così tardi*, too bad you arrive so late; *(che) il cielo l'aiuti!* May heaven help him!

NOTE: The student will see that the subjunctive is generally introduced by **che**.

### USE OF THE TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

**185.** If the verb of the principal clause is a *present* or *future indicative*, the tense used in the subordinate clause is the *present subjunctive* only when present or future time is implied. If the reference is to a past action, the tense is the *imperfect subjunctive* or *perfect subjunctive*.

Ex.: *desidero che legga ad alta voce*, I wish you to read aloud; *gli dirò che aspetti*, I will tell him to wait; *suppongo (che) Le volesse parlare*, I suppose he wished to speak to you; *non credo (che) lo abbia fatto apposta*, I don't believe he did it on purpose.

**186.** When the verb of the principal clause is a past tense of the indicative, the tense used in the subordinate clause is the *imperfect subjunctive*.

Ex.: *il medico gli ordinò che non si levasse di letto*,  
the doctor ordered him not to leave his bed.

NOTE: If, however, the reference is to a future event, the present subjunctive is used.

Ex.: *gli ho raccomandato che non lo dica a nessuno*, I  
advised him not to tell it to any one.

**187.** For the use of the subjunctive in conditional phrases, see § 189.

**188.** When the verb of the principal clause is a present conditional, the verb in the subordinate clause is usually in the imperfect subjunctive when the reference is to a present or future action; it is in the pluperfect subjunctive if the action expressed is past.

Ex.: *non vorrei che partisse senza vedermi*, I should not like for him to leave without seeing me; *vorrebbe ch'io avessi letto tutto questo capitolo*, he should like for me to have read all this chapter.

#### EXERCISE XXXIV

A. — 1. Non credo ch'Ella possa tradurre questo passo senza l'aiuto di un dizionario. 2. Ho insistito specialmente su questo punto perchè Ella non ricada più negli stessi errori. 3. Vuoi ch'io chiuda la finestra col caldo che fa? 4. Vorremmo ch'Ella ci esprimesse le Sue idee su questa questione. 5. Mi sorprende che il fiume sia cresciuto tanto in così breve tempo. 6. La dottrina di Monroe non permette che le nazioni d'Europa fondino nuove colonie in America. 7. Non era necessario ch'Ella lo conoscesse personalmente per fargli una proposta di questo genere. 8. Non c'è ragione che lo persuada a desistere dal suo proposito. 9. Gli dirò che si rivolga a Lei per informazioni

10. Mi dispiace ch'Ella non possa intervenire alla riunione che si terrà domani all'università.

B. — 1. I am sorry you have decided to (*di*) leave so soon. 2. I have not introduced you to my friend because I thought (*imp. ind.*) you knew (§ 149, note) him. 3. Tell your brother to come to (*da*) me at once; it is necessary that I see him not later than (§ 40, 2) to-morrow. 4. I think (that) he did not understand (*past subj.*) your words well. 5. Do you think (that) the professor will accept (§ 184, 3, note) an excuse like this? 6. I fear the streets are too muddy to (*per*) go out. 7. I must go now because I fear it might rain. 8. I think (that) you have all the reasons in (§ 44) the world to (*di*) complain. 9. I shouldn't like for you to spend (§ 188) more than (§ 40, 2) what (§ 87) you have. 10. Your letter will not leave until to-morrow unless you mail it to-day before (§ 184, 8) the post-office closes (use verb reflexively).

## LESSON XXXV

### THE CONDITIONAL

The conditional mood is used in Italian practically in the same manner as in English. However, the student should carefully study the following rules.

**189.** A condition introduced in English by *if* (or any other expression equivalent in meaning) followed by a past or conditional tense, is expressed in Italian by *se* followed by the *pluperfect subjunctive* or *imperfect subjunctive* with the *past* or *present conditional* in the conclusion.

Ex.: if you had known him you would not have spoken\* thus of him, *se l'avesse conosciuto non avrebbe parlato\* così di lui*; if it should rain I could not leave, *se piovesse non potrei partire*.

**190.** The present conditional is often used to express doubt or uncertainty in the present.

Ex.: *ci sarebbe un posto per me?* Is there (perchance) a place for me?

**191.** The conditional of the verbs *potere*, *volere*, *dovere*, followed by an infinitive, expressed or implied, is often rendered in English by a compound form in which *could*, *would*, or *should*, respectively, are the auxiliaries.

\* In Italian as well as in English the present conditional could be used in the conclusion (would speak, *parlerebbe*), but the reference then would be to a present action.

Ex.: **potrebbe** *Ella fare altrettanto?* Could you do as much? **vorrebbe** *Ella rimanere con noi?* Would you stay with us? *Mi pare ch'Ella* **dovrebbe** *saperlo*, it seems to me that you *should* know it.

NOTE: The conditional of **volere** is sometimes used to express a request politely.

Ex.: **vorrebbe** (*Ella*) *dirmi come si pronuncia questa parola?* Would you (please) tell me how this word is pronounced?

### THE INFINITIVE

**192.** The infinitive is used instead of the subjunctive when the subject of the subordinate clause is the same as the subject of the principal clause.

Ex.: *teme d'essere ammalato*, he fears he is (*lit.* to be) sick.

**193.** When the verb of the principal clause is impersonal, the infinitive is used in the subordinate clause provided no subject is expressed, otherwise the subjunctive is used.

Ex.: *non si può perder tempo*, no time can be lost.

But: *bisogna ch'egli parta subito*, it is necessary for him to leave at once.

**194.** The infinitive is often used in Italian as a noun generally preceded by the singular masculine form of the article, and sometimes by a possessive, demonstrative, or relative adjective.

Ex.: *il nascere poveri non è una disgrazia*, humble birth (*lit.* to be born poor) is not a disgrace; *il tuo criticare non serve a nulla*, your criticism is to no purpose (useless); *questo parlare continuo non va*, this continual talking will not do; *che agire è questo?* What way of doing is this?

**195.** The English gerund preceded by a preposition is almost invariably rendered in Italian with the infinitive.

Ex.: I am tired of reading, *sono stanco di leggere*; do not think of being able to translate without using the dictionary, *non creda di poter tradurre senza usare il dizionario*.

**196.** The use of prepositions governing the infinitive is explained in Lesson XXXVIII, § 221 to 226.

### EXERCISE XXXV

A. — 1. S'Ella avesse pensato di più, avrebbe risposto meglio. 2. Se fosse accaduto qualche cosa di nuovo te lo direi. 3. Potrebbe accorgersi anche Lei che le cose non vanno come dovrebbero andare. 4. Bisogna andare cauti nel parlare. 5. Vorrebbe Ella tradurre di nuovo questo passo difficile? 6. Il perder tempo in queste inezie non Le gioverà certo. 7. Ella potrebbe rendermi questo servizio se volesse. 8. Perchè non dovresti convincerti dopo aver inteso le sue ragioni? 9. Se Loro non fossero così distratti quando Li interrogo, risponderebbero meglio. 10. Crede d'aver tradotto bene, Lei?

B. — 1. How<sup>1</sup> happy<sup>3</sup> I should be<sup>2</sup> if I could own a house like this. 2. If I had known that you wanted (*imp. ind.*) to read this book, I would have given it to you (§ 63). 3. What a (§ 97) blessing it would be if it rained now. 4. He thinks he can (§ 192) do what (§ 87) he wants. 5. I soon<sup>2</sup> get tired<sup>1</sup> of reading (use partitive construction, § 8, 5) stuff like this. 6. It is necessary to decide now whether (*se*) to go or not. 7. All this talk is perfectly useless. 8. It seems to me that you could (§ 191) translate these sentences a little better (§ 39, note). 9. I should (§ 191) like (*omit*) to speak to you (*conj. pron. of the 3d person sing.*) a moment. 10. What would you do in a case like this?

## LESSON XXXVI

### PRESENT PARTICIPLE — PAST PARTICIPLE

#### PRESENT PARTICIPLE (GERUND)

**197.** The present participle is always invariable. As already stated (§ 146, note) the present participle is often used with the auxiliary **stare** to form the progressive construction. The present participles of **andare** and **essere** are consistent exceptions to this rule; thus:

I am going to the station, *vado* (not *sto andando*) *alla stazione*; the question is being discussed by all, *la questione è discussa* (not *sta essendo discussa*) *da tutti*.

NOTE: Besides **stare** there are a few other verbs used as auxiliaries to form the progressive construction. Of these, **andare** is the most important, and when it precedes the present participle it gives to the action an intensive and progressive value.

Ex.: *va dicendo male di tutti*, he speaks ill of every one.

**198.** The English gerund governed by some forms of the verbs **to see**, **to hear**, and the like, is rendered in Italian with the infinitive.

Ex.: I see him coming, *lo vedo venire*; I hear knocking at the door, *sento battere alla porta*.

#### PAST PARTICIPLE

**199.** Concerning the agreement of the past participle in compound tenses, see also § 115, 116, 120.



**200.** The past participle is often used absolutely. In such case an auxiliary is understood. The absolute past participle always agrees in gender and number with the following complement or with the subject.

Ex.: *finita la lezione, andrò a fare due passi*, (when the lesson (is) finished, I shall go for a walk (*lit.* two steps)); *giunti alla stazione, ci dissero che il treno era in ritardo*, on arriving at the station we were told that the train was late.

**201.** Sometimes the past participle is followed by the conjunction **che** and an auxiliary. In this case the compound tense is used absolutely, and the order of words of such compound is merely inverted.

Ex.: *finito che ebbe di parlare, il pubblico applaudì*, as soon as he finished speaking, the audience applauded; *smontato che fui dal treno, mi sentii chiamare da una folla di fiaccherai*, as soon as I got off the train, I heard myself called by a crowd of cabmen.

NOTE: In the foregoing examples, **che** is but a part of the compound conjunction **tosto che**, and both sentences could be expressed according to the last example of § 179.

**202.** The English past participle preceded by a complement and depending on principal verbs like *to see*, *to hear*, *to have*, etc., is often rendered in Italian with the infinitive.

Ex.: I have seen it done, *l'ho visto fare*; I heard (it said) that . . ., *ho sentito dire che . . .*; I had a suit made last week, *mi son fatto fare un vestito la settimana scorsa*.

#### EXERCISE XXXVI

A. — 1. Morto Cesare, Roma s'immerse in atroci guerre civili. 2. Sto discutendo con questo signore da due ore e

non mi riesce di convincerlo. 3. Questa canzone l'ho sentita cantare molte volte. 4. Quante pagine hai lette di questo libro? 5. Può dirmi cosa va cercando Lei? 6. «L'appetito viene mangiando» è un modo di dire comune. 7. Impaurite dalla discesa di Attila in Italia, le popolazioni delle provincie vicine all'alto (upper) Adriatico, si rifugiarono sulle lagune dove poi sorse Venezia (Venice). 8. Non ripeto nè più nè meno che quello che ho sentito dire. 9. Quando ti sei fatto fare questo vestito? 10. Ho visto fare delle cose ben (much) più difficili di queste, io. (This pronoun placed at the end, makes the sentence very emphatic.)

B. — 1. I met (*preterit*) your friend this morning while I was going to school. 2. Who has told you all these things? 3. By (*da*) which tailor did you have your suit made? 4. Who can have done that? (§ 78). 5. Where are you going so hurriedly? 6. I have two of Fogazzaro's (§ 8, 4, and 10) novels in my library, but I have not read them (*conj. pron.*) yet. 7. Everything considered, it seems to me (§ 184, 4) that you are right (§ 121) in (*dì*) refusing (§ 195) the place that is being offered to you (*conj. pron.*). 8. He went away (§ 144, note) without saying a word about the matter. 9. What have you heard (§ 202) about the failure of the bank. 10. After the father died (see A, 1, above), there was (*preterit*; § 117) no more (§ 170) union in the family.

## LESSON XXXVII

### ADVERBS

**203.** The most common adverbs in Italian are:

1. Adverbs of place:

**vi, ci** (used exclusively with verbs), here.

**qui, qua**, here.

**costì, costà**, there.

**là, lì**, there.

**ove, dove**, where.

**onde, donde**, whence.

**su, sopra**, on, above.

**giù, abbasso**, down.

**dappertutto**, everywhere.

**indietro**, backwards.

**innanzi, davanti**, before.

**avanti**, forward, far.

**dentro**, within.

**fuori (di)**, outside, out (of).

**lontano**, distantly, far.

**vicino**, near.

2. Adverbs of time:

**ora, adesso**, now.

**quando**, when.

**sempre**, always.

**mai, giammai**, ever, never.

**spesso, sovente**, often.

**allora**, then.

**prima, dianzi**, before.

**finchè**, until.

**tardi**, late.

**presto**, soon.

**subito**, at once, immediately.

**intanto, frattanto**, meanwhile.

**già**, already.

**poi, poscia**, afterwards.

**poc'anzi, poco fa**, a little while ago.

**ancora**, yet, still.

3. Adverbs of manner:

**come**, how.

**così**, thus.

**bene**, well.

**male**, badly.

**insieme**, together.

**quasi**, almost.

**volentieri**, willingly.

**molto, assai**, very.

## 4. Adverbs of quantity:

**molto**, assai, much.  
**troppo**, too, too much.  
**più**, more.  
**abbastanza**, enough.  
**meno**, less.

**appena**, scarcely.  
**solamente**, **soltanto**, only.  
**poco**, little.  
**quanto**, how much.

## 5. Adverbs of affirmation and negation:

**sì**, yes.  
**certo**, **certamente**, certainly.  
**no**, no.

**davvero**, indeed.  
**neanche**, **neppure**, not even.  
**appunto**, just, exactly.

## 6. Adverbial expressions like:

**a caso**, by chance, at random.  
**per tempo**, early.  
**di buona voglia**, willingly.  
**di mala voglia**, unwillingly.  
**di fresco**, recently, newly.  
**di colpo**, suddenly.  
**di quando in quando**, once in a while, from time to time.  
**in fretta**, **di fretta**, hastily.  
**di bene in meglio**, better and better.  
**di sopra**, up-stairs.

**a buon mercato**, cheap.  
**di giorno**, during the day.  
**di notte**, at night.  
**da ora innanzi**, from now on.  
**di nascosto**, secretly.  
**con comodo**, at ease.  
**di solito**, **al solito**, usually.  
**fra poco**, **fra breve**, in a short while.  
**a proposito**, at the right moment, by the way.  
**presto o tardi**, sooner or later.

**204.** Adjectives may be turned into adverbs by adding **-mente** to the feminine form. Adjectives ending in **-le** or **-re** drop the final **e** before **-mente**.

Ex.: *coraggioso*, courageous; *coraggiosa* (f.), **coraggiosamente**, courageously; *recente* (m. and f.), recent; **recentemente**, recently.

But: *utile* (m. and f.), useful; **utilmente**, usefully.

**205.** Adverbs are compared like adjectives.

Ex.: *destramente*, cleverly; *più destramente*, more cleverly; *il più destramente*, most cleverly.

**206.** The following adverbs have irregular forms of comparison:

bene, well.	<b>meglio</b> , better.	(il) <b>meglio</b> , (the) best; <b>benissimo</b> and <b>ottimamente</b> , very well.
male, badly.	<b>peggio</b> , worse.	(il) <b>peggio</b> , (the) worst; <b>malissimo</b> and <b>pessimamente</b> , very badly.
molto, much.	<b>più</b> , more.	(il) <b>più</b> , (the) most; <b>moltissimo</b> , very much.
poco, little.	<b>meno</b> , less.	(il) <b>meno</b> , (the) least; <b>pochissimo</b> and <b>minimamente</b> , very little.

**207.** Of the following adverbs of place:

**qui** and **qua**, here, usually refer to a place near the person who speaks.

**costì** and **costà**, there, refer to a place near the person spoken to.

**lì** and **là**, there, refer to a place far from both.

NOTE: The forms **qui**, **costì**, **lì**, are perhaps preferable when indicating a precise and limited space, like **stanza**, room; **casa**, house, and the like. Such distinction is not binding, however, nor is it always observed.

### EXERCISE XXXVII

A. — 1. A proposito, Le è piaciuto l'articolo che è apparso recentemente sull' Herald di New-York? 2. Le mie cose (affairs) qui vanno di bene in meglio. 3. Da ora innanzi voglio che tutti vengano per tempo. 4. Forse questo libro non mi è piaciuto perchè l'ho letto troppo in fretta; Ella può leggerlo con comodo e tenerlo finchè vuole. 5. Accetterei volentieri il Suo invito per il concerto di stasera, ma sfortunatamente sono ancora un po' indisposto, e ho paura che mi faccia male rincasare tardi di notte. 6. Queste mele sono arrivate di fresco dalla campagna e davvero non potrei venderle a più buon mercato. 7. Ella riuscirà presto

a parlare italiano se continuerà a studiare di buona voglia come fa ora. 8. L'infermo è già fuori di pericolo, e fra breve lascerà il letto. 9. Il peggio è ch'Ella non riflette abbastanza, e così scrive i Suoi esercizi a caso e commette errori che sono imperdonabili. 10. Di solito i Suoi compiti sono scritti malissimo.

B. — 1. You are always welcome at (*in*; omit the article) my<sup>2</sup> house<sup>1</sup>. 2. Sooner or later you will repent (§ 137) of (*di*) what (§ 87) you have done. 3. The article has appeared recently in one of the leading New York papers. 4. It seems to me that you have gone (§ 184, 4) too far (*avanti*) with your promises and I think it is (§ 184, 3) too late now to (*per*) withdraw (*refl.*). 5. I don't work much at night, but usually I get up early in (omit) the morning. 6. By the way, could you (§ 191) tell me how much this<sup>2</sup> book<sup>3</sup> costs<sup>1</sup>? 7. He only<sup>2</sup> comes<sup>1</sup> to (*a*) see me once in a while, but I hope he will come (§ 184, 3, note) more often from now on. 8. He went out (use *perfect tense*; see § 118) a little while ago. 9. This is the worst that can (*pres. subj.*) happen. 10. I have looked for the book everywhere and I have not found it (§ 61) yet.

## LESSON XXXVIII

### PREPOSITIONS

**208.** The most simple prepositions in Italian are:

<b>a</b> , to, at.	<b>fuori</b> , out, without.
<b>avanti</b> , <b>davanti</b> , before.	<b>intorno</b> , about, around.
<b>circa</b> , concerning.	<b>lungo</b> , <b>lunghe</b> , along, by.
<b>con</b> , with.	<b>in</b> , in, into, at, on.
<b>contro</b> , against.	<b>mediante</b> , by means of.
<b>da</b> , from.	<b>per</b> , for, by, through.
<b>dentro</b> , inside of, within.	<b>presso</b> , near.
<b>di</b> , of, from.	<b>secondo</b> , according to.
<b>dietro</b> , behind, after ( <i>not of time</i> ).	<b>senza</b> , without.
<b>dopo</b> , after, behind.	<b>su</b> , <b>sopra</b> , on, upon, above.
<b>eccetto</b> , except.	<b>sotto</b> , under.
<b>finchè</b> , until.	<b>verso</b> , towards.
<b>fra</b> , <b>tra</b> , between, among, in.	<b>prima</b> , before.

**209.** By far the greater number of Italian prepositions are coupled with **di**, **a**, **da**, thus forming compound prepositions. In fact, many of the foregoing prepositions (§ 208), may be compounded, as:

**contro** *me*, **contro di** *me*, **contro a** *me*, against me.

**dietro** *la casa*, **dietro della** *casa*, **dietro dalla** *casa*, behind the house.

### REMARKS ON THE USE OF SOME PREPOSITIONS

#### A

**210.** The preposition **a** (sometimes **ad** before a vowel) usually rendered in English by *to* and *at*, is often used to form adverbial expressions indicating:

## 1. Distribution.

Ex.: (a) *uno a uno*, one by one; (a) *poco a poco*, little by little.

## 2. Physical or moral disposition.

Ex.: *a viso aperto*, courageously (*lit.* with open face);  
*a mente calma*, calmly (*lit.* with a calm mind).

## 3. Manner, means.

Ex.: *a piedi*, on foot; *a vapore*, by steam; *a elettricità*, by electricity.

**211.** *To, at, in*, before names of cities are usually expressed by **a**; before names of countries by **in** (often compounded with the article).

Ex.: *vado a New-York*, I am going to New York; *sei stato a Parigi?* Have you been in Paris? *forse andrò in Italia*, perhaps I shall go to Italy.

**Di**

**212.** The English possessive case is always rendered in Italian by means of the preposition **di**, of (see § 73).

Ex.: did you see Mr. White's new store? *Ha Ella veduto il nuovo negozio del signor White?*

**213.** **Di**, is always used before a noun expressing the material of a preceding noun.

Ex.: *un vestito di seta*, a silk dress; *una borsa di pelle*, a leather bag.

**Da**

**214.** **Da**, from, by, is used before words indicating the use or the characteristic feature of an object or person.

Ex.: *questa è la sala da pranzo*, this is the dining-room;  
*mi dia della carta da scrivere*, give me some writing-



paper; *è proibito portare armi da fuoco*, carrying fire-arms is forbidden; *è un signore dai modi cortesi*, he is a gentleman of courteous manner.

**215.** *Da*, is often used with personal pronouns or nouns especially after verbs of motion or rest.

Ex.: *verrò da te stasera*, I will come to (see) you this evening; *sono stato dal libraio tutta la mattina*, I was at the bookseller's the whole morning.

**216.** Sometimes *da* expresses a relation of manner.

Ex.: *questo è agire da uomo*, this is acting like a man.

**217.** *Per*, when preceding an infinitive, usually corresponds to the English preposition *to*, meaning *in order to*.

Ex.: *non so che fare per fargli coraggio*, I don't know what to do to encourage him.

**218.** Expressions formed with *per* and an infinitive depending on forms of *finire* and *stare*, may be rendered as follows:

Ex.: *finì per accettare*, he finally accepted; *stava per uscire*, I was about to go out.

**219.** *Per* is often the equivalent of English *by*, *per*, *through*.

Ex.: *Le spedirò il libro per posta*, I will send you the book by mail; *Le offro uno sconto del dieci per cento*, I offer you a ten per cent discount; *entrai per la porta di dietro*, I entered through the back door.

#### PREPOSITIONS BEFORE AN INFINITIVE

**220.** The correct use of prepositions before an infinitive depends largely on experience, and the following rules, though very important, are not meant to be exhaustive.

**221.** The infinitive is often used without a preposition after many verbs of which the most important are:

**potere**, to be able.

**sapere**, to know *how*.

**dovere**, to be necessary, must.

**osare**, to dare.

**solere**, to be accustomed.

**sperare**,\* to hope.

**sentire**, to hear.

**volere**, to wish, want.

**lasciare**, to allow, let.

**credere**,\* to believe.

**desiderare**,\* to desire.

**222.** The infinitive is generally used without a preposition after impersonal verbs or expressions.

Ex.: *basta dirlo una volta*, it is enough to say it once;  
*è meglio aspettare ancora un po'*, it is better to wait  
 a little longer.

**223.** The infinitive is usually preceded by **a** after verbs of motion in general, and verbs of *beginning*, *continuing*, *helping*, *exhorting*, *learning*, *teaching*.

Ex.: *vado a vedere cosa c'è di nuovo*, I am going to see  
 what news there is; *La esorto a studiare*, I urge you to  
 study; *ho imparato a parlare italiano un poco*, I have  
 learned to speak Italian a little.

**224.** *To*, is rendered by **di** after many verbs not included in the foregoing classification unless purpose or cause is expressed, in which case, **per** is used (§ 217).

Ex.: *mi dispiace di non essere andato*, I am sorry not  
 to have gone; *so d'aver torto*, I know I am wrong (see  
 § 192).

**225.** An infinitive is generally preceded by **da** if depending on forms of **essere** and **avere**, especially when implying an idea of duty or necessity.

\* After this verb the infinitive may also be preceded by **di**.

Ex.: *questo lavoro è da rifare*, this work is to be done again; *avrei da scrivere ma non ne ho voglia*, I should have to write, but I don't feel like it.

## EXERCISE XXXVIII

A. — 1. Ma lascia andare, tanto (anyway) non c'è nulla da guadagnare in discussioni simili. 2. In questa occasione Ella ha agito da vero gentiluomo e ha fatto bene a esprimere le Sue opinioni a viso aperto. 3. Prima degli esami finali avremo da ripassare (review) tutti gli esercizi di questa grammatica. 4. Felice di vederla, stavo proprio per venire da Lei. 5. Basta dirlo una volta, mi pare, di stare attenti e di non chiacchierare. 6. Vado a vedere se gli operai hanno incominciato a lavorare. 7. Chi non è con me è contro me. 8. Vuol venire a passeggiare con me stasera lungo le rive del fiume? 9. Per ben tradurre una lingua straniera, non basta soltanto saperla parlare. 10. Spero di vederti ancora prima di partire.

B. — 1. Where have you bought these beautiful silk handkerchiefs? 2. We will go to (*in*) town on foot, if the weather is fine. 3. I came to you for information (*pl.*). 4. I talked to him (*conj. pron.*) for hours and hours but I (omit) finally convinced him (§ 218). 5. It is necessary to leave at once. 6. If I have not much to do this evening, I will come to see you (§ 215) without doubt. 7. Go and tell him (§ 145, note 2) that (the) dinner is ready. 8. Is it (omit) a gold watch, the one (§ 88) you bought a few (§ 106) weeks ago at the jeweler's (§ 215)? 9. You (use *Ella*) must do as I tell you (*conj. pron.*) in order to succeed. 10. This is not the kind of writing-paper (§ 214 and 84) I wish to buy.

## LESSON XXXIX

### CONJUNCTIONS AND INTERJECTIONS

**226.** The following conjunctions, classified as to their office in a sentence, are the most commonly used:

*Conjunctive* — **e, ed** (before vowel), and; **che**, that, than.

*Additional* — **anche, ancora**, also; **oltre, inoltre, altresì**, moreover; **più, di più**, more.

*Negative* — **nemmeno, neppure, neanche**, neither, nor, not even.

*Alternative* — **o, ovvero, oppure, ossia, or; o . . . o**, either . . . or.

*Declarative* — **cioè**, that is; **cioè a dire**, that is to say.

*Exempting* — **eccetto, fuorchè, salvo**, except; **eccetto che, salvo che**, except that, unless; **eccetto se, salvo se**, except if.

*Comparative* — **come, si come, in quel modo che**, as, just as; with their corresponding correlative forms **così, so; non altrimenti, similmente**, likewise.

*Adversative* — **benchè, quantunque, sebbene, tuttochè, ancorchè** (with the subjunctive), although; followed sometimes by **però, pure, tuttavia**, yet, nevertheless.

*Conditional* — **se, if; in caso che, dato che** (with the subjunctive), provided.

*Causal* — **poichè, giacchè**, since.

*Conclusive* — **dunque, adunque, perciò**, then, therefore.

*Elective* — **più, piuttosto, meglio**, rather; followed by **che**, than.

### REMARKS

**227.** **Perchè**, when interrogative, means *why*. It signifies *because* in affirmative sentences. It is sometimes followed by a subjunctive with the meaning of *so that, in order that*.

Ex.: *perchè non esci con me stasera? — Perchè ho molto*

*da fare*, Why don't you come out with me this evening? — Because I have much to do; *Le dico questo perchè impari*, I tell you this so that you may learn.

### INTERJECTIONS

**228.** Interjections are either used alone as expressive of some emotion or with other words to give more force or emphasis to a sentence.

**229.** Common interjections are:

ahi!	} oh! alas!	basta! enough!
ahimè!		silenzio! } hush!
ohimè!		zitto! }
ah! ah!	} heavens! gracious!	per bacco! }
eh! eh!		perdinci! }
oh! oh!		capperi! } indeed!
poh! pooh!		caspita! }
olà! oh there!	} up! come then! come now!	su! }
come! how! why!		via! }
ohè! say!		su via! }
ebbene! well then!	} courage! cheer up!	guai! woe!
largo! make way!		aiuto! help!
animo!		per carità! for charity's sake!
coraggio!		per l'amor del cielo! for goodness sake!
cuore!		
oh bella! fine indeed! that's all!		bene! fine! good!
diavolo! the deuce!		bravo! bravo!
all'erta! look out! beware!		

**230.** **Bravo** is an adjective and should always agree in gender and number with the noun to which it refers.

**Zitto** may be invariable or agree with its noun if considered as an adjective.

Ex.: **zitto**, *ragazzi* or **zitti**, *ragazzi*! hush, boys!

NOTE: **Bravo** may be used in the superlative: **bravissim-o**, **-a**, **-i**, **-e**.

## EXERCISE XXXIX

A. — 1. Via, via; meno ciarle e più fatti. 2. Per bacco, adesso che ci penso, mi pare che tu abbia ragione. 3. Verrò da Lei stasera purchè il tempo sia bello. 4. Neppure un indizio di colpevolezza è risultato da questo processo. 5. Benchè mi abbiano assicurato che gli esami sono difficili, pure spero di passarli bene. 6. Poichè le cose stanno come dice Lei, non mi pare ch'Ella debba più interessarsi di lui. 7. Per carità, non dica nulla di ciò che Le ho riferito, altrimenti potrebbero credere ch'Ella sia d'accordo con me. 8. Diavolo, sono cose da ripetersi queste? 9. Bravo, perdinci, quello è veramente il modo di fare. 10. Come ho sbagliato io così può sbagliare anche Lei.

B. — 1. Heavens, you always<sup>2</sup> complain<sup>1</sup> about (*di*) everything. 2. Well then, what do you intend to do? 3. Come now, be (translate in four different manners) good. 4. For goodness sake don't interrupt me any more (§ 170). 5. He has not even said a word to me (*conj. pron.*). 6. Your<sup>2</sup> friend<sup>3</sup> also<sup>1</sup> should (§ 191) come with you. 7. Either you accept these conditions or I give the contract to some one (§ 106) else. 8. An impostor is never (§ 170) believed, not even when he tells the truth. 9. I believe (that) we should (§ 191) take a cab rather than go so far on foot. 10. All are here except him (*disj. pron.*).

## IRREGULAR VERBS

The irregular verbs contained in this list are not arranged alphabetically as a whole, but are assigned alphabetically to their respective conjugations. Though the list is not complete, it is hoped that the omission of rare verbs will not cause inconvenience. In any case the student will find in it more verbs than he can ever hope to use.

For irregular verbs of the first conjugation, see § 143, 4.

## IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION

Many verbs of the second conjugation are irregular only in the first and third person singular and third person plural of the *preterit*, and in the *past participle*. The endings of the three irregular persons of the preterit are respectively **-i, -e, -ero**. For brevity, then, only the first person singular of the preterit is given; from this, the student can easily get the third singular and plural by changing **i** to **e** and **i** to **ero** respectively. The regular forms (second person singular and first and second person plural) are formed by adding to the stem of the verb the regular endings **-esti, -emmo, -este**. All other tenses except the preterit and past participle are formed regularly according to § 126.

The following list contains only compound verbs that are used in the exercises.

INFINITIVE	PRETERIT	PAST PARTICIPLE
accendere, to light	accési	accésó
accórgere* <i>refl.</i> , to notice, perceive	accórsi (the o is open)	accórto
accórrere, to run to.	accórsi (the o is closed)	accórso
affiggere, to post (placards)	affíssi	affíssc
affliggere, to afflict	afflíssi	afflítto
allúdere, to allude	allúsi	allúso
árdere, to burn	ársi	árso
arréndere <i>refl.</i> , to surrender	arrési	arrésó
aspérgere, to sprinkle	aspérsi	aspérso
assidere* <i>refl.</i> , to sit down	assísi	assíso
assistere, to assist	(reg. assistéi or assistétti)	assistító
assólvere, to absolve	assólsi (also reg. assolvéi)	assólto
assumere, to assume	assúnsi	assúnto

\* Verbs marked with a star form the compound tenses with *éssere*.

INFINITIVE	PRETERIT	PAST PARTICIPLE
<b>cédere</b> , to yield	(reg. <b>cedéi</b> or <b>cedétti</b> ) poetical: <b>céssi</b>	(reg. <b>cedúto</b> )
<b>chiúdere</b> , to close	<b>chiúsi</b>	<b>chiúso</b>
<b>cíngere</b> , to gird, surround	<b>cínsi</b>	<b>cínto</b>
<b>comméttere</b> , to commit	<b>commísi</b>	<b>comméssó</b>
<b>compréndere</b> , to under- stand	<b>comprési</b>	<b>comprésó</b>
<b>comprímere</b> , to compress	<b>compréssi</b>	<b>compréssó</b>
<b>concédere</b> , to concede	<b>concéssi</b> (also reg. <b>concedéi</b> )	<b>concéssó</b> (also reg. <b>concedúto</b> )
<b>conchiúdere</b> , to conclude	<b>conchiúsi</b>	<b>conchiúso</b>
<b>confóndere</b> , to confuse	<b>confúsi</b>	<b>confuso</b>
<b>connéttere</b> , to connect	<b>connéssi</b> (also reg. <b>connettéi</b> )	<b>connéssó</b> (also reg. <b>connettúto</b> )
<b>conóscere</b> , to know, be acquainted with	<b>conóbbi</b>	(reg. <b>conosciúto</b> )
<b>contúndere</b> , to bruise	<b>contúsi</b>	<b>contúso</b>
<b>convíncere</b> , to convince	<b>convínsi</b>	<b>convínto</b>
<b>córrere</b> , † to run	<b>córsi</b>	<b>córso</b>
<b>créscere</b> , * to grow	<b>crébbe</b>	(reg. <b>cresciúto</b> )
<b>cuócere</b> , to cook	<b>cóssi</b>	<b>cótto</b>
<b>decídere</b> , to decide	<b>decísi</b>	<b>decíso</b>
<b>diféndere</b> , to defend	<b>difési</b>	<b>diféso</b>
<b>dirígere</b> , to direct	<b>diréssi</b>	<b>dirétto</b>
<b>discútere</b> , to discuss	<b>discússi</b>	<b>discússo</b>
<b>dispérdere</b> , to waste, scatter	<b>dispérsi</b> (also reg. <b>disperdéi</b> )	<b>dispérso</b> (also reg. <b>disperdúto</b> )
<b>dissuadére</b> , to dissuade	<b>dissuási</b>	<b>dissuáso</b>
<b>distínguere</b> , to distinguish	<b>distínsi</b>	<b>distínto</b>
<b>distrúggere</b> , to destroy	<b>distrússi</b>	<b>distrútto</b>
<b>divídere</b> , to divide	<b>divísi</b>	<b>divíso</b>
<b>elídere</b> , to elide	<b>elísi</b> (also reg. <b>elidéi</b> )	<b>elíso</b>
<b>elúdere</b> , to elude	<b>elúsi</b> (also reg. <b>eludéi</b> )	<b>elúso</b>
<b>emérgere</b> , * to emerge	<b>emérsi</b>	<b>emérso</b>

\* Verbs marked with a star form the compound tenses with **éssere**.

† **Córrere** takes as auxiliary either **éssere** or **avére**, though it might be remarked that with **éssere** an idea of duty or necessity may be implied, as: **son corso**, I had, was bound to run.



INFINITIVE	PRETERIT	PAST PARTICIPLE
<b>erigere</b> , to erect	<b>eréssi</b>	<b>erétto</b>
<b>esigere</b> , to exact	(reg. <b>esigéi</b> )	<b>esátto</b>
<b>esimere</b> , to exempt	(reg. <b>esiméi</b> )	<b>esénto</b>
<b>esistere</b> ,* to exist	(reg. <b>esistéi</b> )	<b>esistíto</b>
<b>espéllere</b> , to expel	<b>espúlси</b>	<b>espúlso</b>
<b>esplódere</b> , to explode	<b>esplóси</b>	<b>esplóso</b>
<b>esprimere</b> , to express	<b>espréssi</b>	<b>espréso</b>
<b>estinguere</b> , to extinguish	<b>estínsi</b>	<b>estínto</b>
<b>féndere</b> , to split, cleave	<b>féssi</b> (also reg. <b>fendéi</b> )	<b>féssо</b> (also reg. <b>fendúto</b> )
<b>figgere</b> , to drive in	<b>físsi or fíси</b>	<b>físso, físo or fítto</b>
<b>figgere</b> , to feign	<b>fínsi</b>	<b>fínto</b>
<b>fóndere</b> , to fuse, cast	<b>fúси</b> (also reg. <b>fondéi</b> )	<b>fúso</b> (rarely: <b>fondúto</b> )
<b>frángere</b> , to smash	<b>fránsi</b>	<b>fránto</b>
<b>friggere</b> , to fry	<b>fríssi</b>	<b>frítto</b>
<b>giúngere</b> ,* to arrive, reach	<b>giúnsi</b>	<b>giúnto</b>
<b>illúdere</b> , to delude (deceive)	<b>illúси</b>	<b>illúso</b>
<b>immérgere</b> , to dip, plunge	<b>immérsi</b>	<b>immérso</b>
<b>imprimere</b> , to impress, imprint	<b>impréssi</b> (also reg. <b>impriméi</b> )	<b>impréso</b>
<b>inténdere</b> , to understand	<b>intési</b>	<b>intéso</b>
<b>interrómpere</b> , to interrupt	<b>interrúppi</b>	<b>interróttо</b>
<b>intíngere</b> , to dip (the pen, brush, etc.)	<b>intínsi</b>	<b>intínto</b>
<b>intrúdere</b> , to intrude	<b>intrúси</b>	<b>intrúso</b>
<b>invádere</b> , to invade	<b>invási</b>	<b>inváso</b>
<b>lédere</b> , to injure	<b>lési</b>	<b>léso</b>
<b>leggere</b> , to read	<b>léssi</b>	<b>létto</b>
<b>mérgere</b> , to merge, plunge	<b>mérsi</b>	<b>mérso</b>
<b>méscere</b> , to mix, pour	(reg. <b>mescéi</b> )	<b>místо</b> (also reg. <b>me- sciúto</b> ) <b>místо</b> means <i>mixed</i> ; <b>mesciúto</b> , <i>poured</i>
<b>méttere</b> , to put	<b>míси</b>	<b>méssо</b>
<b>mórdere</b> , to bite	<b>mórsi</b>	<b>mórso</b>
<b>muóvere</b> , to move	<b>móssi</b>	<b>móssо</b>
<b>náscere</b> ,* to be born	<b>náсqui</b>	<b>nátо</b>

\* Verbs marked with a star form the compound tenses with **éssere**.

INFINITIVE	PRETERIT	PAST PARTICIPLE
nascóndere, to conceal	nascósi	nascósto <i>or</i> nascóso
neglígere, to neglect	negléssi	neglétto
offéndere, to offend	offési	offéso
opprímere, to oppress	oppréssi	oppréso
percuótere, to strike	percóssi	percóso
pérdere, to lose	(reg. perdéi); pérsi is rare	(reg. perdúto); pérso is rare
perméttere, to permit	permísi	perméso
persuadére, to persuade	persuási	persuáso
piângere, to weep	piánsi	piánto
píngere (poetical), to paint	pínsi	pínto
pióvere, to rain	pióvve (also used in the pl. pióvvero)	(reg. piovúto)
pórgere, to present	pórsi	pórto
predilígere, to prefer, love with partiality	prediléssi	predilétto
presúmere, to presume	presúnsi (also reg. presuméi)	presúnto
protéggere, to protect	protéssi	protétto
rádere, to shave, shear, efface	rási (also reg. radéi)	ráso
raggiúngere, to attain	raggiúnsi	raggiúnto
redímere, to redeem	redénsi (also reg. rediméi)	redénto
réggere, to rule, support	réssi	rétto
réndere, to render	rési (also reg. rendéi)	réso (also reg. ren- dúto)
reprímere, to repress	représsi	représo
resístere, to resist	(reg. resistéi)	resistíto
rídere, to laugh	rísi	ríso
rifléttere, † to reflect (light), send back	rifléssi	rifléso
rifúlgere, to shine	rifúlsi	rifúlso
rincréscere* (imper- sonal), to regret	rincrébbe (third person)	(reg. rincresciúto)
rispóndere, to answer	rispósi	rispósto

\* Verbs marked with a star form the compound tenses with *éssere*.

† *Rifléttere*, when meaning *to meditate*, is regular.

INFINITIVE	PRETERIT	PAST PARTICIPLE
<b>rivólgere</b> <i>refl.</i> , to have recourse	<b>rivólsi</b>	<b>rivólto</b>
<b>ródere</b> , to gnaw; ( <i>refl.</i> , to chafe with rage)	<b>rósi</b>	<b>róso</b>
<b>rómpere</b> , to break	<b>rúppi</b>	<b>rótto</b>
<b>scéndere</b> ,* to descend	<b>scési</b>	<b>scéso</b>
<b>sconfiggere</b> , to defeat	<b>sconfissi</b>	<b>sconfitto</b>
<b>scórgere</b> , to perceive	<b>scórsi</b>	<b>scórso</b>
<b>scuótere</b> , to shake	<b>scóssi</b>	<b>scóssso</b>
<b>sopprímere</b> , to suppress	<b>soppréssi</b>	<b>soppréso</b>
<b>sórgere</b> ,* to rise	<b>sórsi</b>	<b>sórto</b>
<b>sorpréndere</b> , to surprise (often used impersonally)	<b>soprési</b>	<b>sopréso</b>
<b>sospéndere</b> , to suspend	<b>sospési</b>	<b>sospéso</b>
<b>spándere</b> , to spill, spread	(reg. <b>spandéi</b> )	<b>spánto</b>
<b>spárgere</b> , to scatter, spread	<b>spársi</b>	<b>spárso</b>
<b>spéndere</b> , to spend	<b>spési</b>	<b>spéso</b>
<b>spíngere</b> , to push	<b>spínsi</b>	<b>spínto</b>
<b>spórgere</b> , to project	<b>spórsi</b>	<b>spórto</b>
<b>stringere</b> , to bind fast, press, shake	<b>strínsi</b>	<b>strétto</b>
<b>strúggere</b> ,* <i>refl.</i> , to long for	<b>strússi</b>	<b>strútto</b>
<b>succédere</b> ,* to succeed; (impersonal, to happen)	<b>succéssi</b> (also reg. <b>succedéi</b> )	<b>succéso</b> (also reg. <b>succedúto</b> )
<b>téndere</b> , to extend	<b>tési</b>	<b>téso</b>
<b>térgere</b> , to wipe, polish	<b>térsi</b>	<b>térso</b>
<b>tíngere</b> , to tinge, dye	<b>tínsi</b>	<b>tínto</b>
<b>tórcere</b> , to twist	<b>tórsi</b>	<b>tórto</b>
<b>trafiggere</b> , to transfix, pierce	<b>trafissi</b>	<b>trafitto</b>
<b>uccídere</b> , to kill	<b>uccísi</b>	<b>uccíso</b>
<b>úngere</b> , to anoint, grease	<b>únsi</b>	<b>únto</b>
<b>víncere</b> , to win	<b>vínsi</b>	<b>vínto</b>
<b>vívere</b> ,* to live†	<b>víssi</b>	<b>vissúto</b>
<b>vólgere</b> , to turn	<b>vólsi</b>	<b>vólto</b>

\* Verbs marked with a star form the compound tenses with *éssere*.

† The contracted forms *vivrò*, etc., of the future, and *vivréi*, etc., of the conditional are much more preferable than the regular ones *viverò*, etc., and *viveréi*, etc.

Besides the foregoing verbs, many others of the second conjugation are also irregular in other tenses. In the conjugation of such verbs given below, only the forms in heavy type are regular, and those given in parentheses are rare. Tenses not given are regular.

1. **Addúrre**,\* to convey, cite, and also **condúrre**, to conduct; **prodúrre**, to produce; **tradúrre**, to translate; **indúrre**, to induce, etc.

#### PRESENT INDICATIVE

addúco, addúci, addúce; adduciámo, adducéte, addúcono.

#### IMPERFECT INDICATIVE

adducéva, adducévi, adducéva; adducevámo, adduceváte, adducévano.

#### PRETERIT

addússi, adducésti, addússe; adducémmo, adducéste, addússero.

#### FUTURE INDICATIVE

addurrò, addurrái, addurrà; addurrémo, addurréte, addurránno

#### PRESENT CONDITIONAL

addurréi, addurrésti, addurrébbe; addurrémmo, addurréste, addurrébbero.

#### IMPERATIVE

addúci, addúca; adduciámo, adducéte, addúcano.

#### PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

addúca (throughout the singular); adduciámo, adduciáte, addúcano.

#### IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

adducéssi, adducéssi, adducésse; adducéssimo, adducéste, adducéssero.

#### PRESENT PARTICIPLE

adducéndo.

#### PAST PARTICIPLE

addótto.

\* It will be noticed that if the stem of the obsolete form **addúc-ere** were taken into consideration, the *pres. ind.*, *imp. ind.*, *imper.*, *pres. subj.*, *imp. subj.*, and *pres. part.* would be regular. This applies also to the other verbs given above; **condúc-ere**, etc.

## 2. Bére or bévere, to drink.

All tenses of this verb may be formed regularly with the stem **bev-**. However, the irregular forms **bévvì, bévve, bévvéro**, of the preterit, and the forms *berrò, berrái*, etc., of the future, and *berréi, berrésti*, etc., of the conditional, formed with the stem **b-** of *bére*, are quite common.

3. **Cadére**, to fall, with its compounds **decadére**, to decade, **ricadére**, to fall again, **scadére**, to fall due, **accadére** (impersonal), to happen, etc.

### PRESENT INDICATIVE

**cádo** (*or cággio*), **cádi, cáde**; **cadiámo, cadéte, cádono** (*or cággiono*).

### PRETERIT

**cáddi** (*or cadéi*), **cadésti, cádde** (*or cadè*); **cadémmo, cadéste, cáddero** (*or cadérono*).

### FUTURE INDICATIVE

**cadrò** (*or caderò*), **cadrái** (*or caderái*), etc.

### PRESENT CONDITIONAL

**cadréi** (*or caderéi*), **cadrésti** (*or caderésti*), etc.

### PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

**cada** (*or cággia*) (throughout the singular); **cadiámo** (*or caggiámo*), **cadiáte** (*or caggiáte*), **cádano** (*or cággiano*).

(Compound tenses are formed with **éssere**.)

## 4. Calére (defective), to care for.

This verb is rarely used. It is impersonal and requires the pronouns **mi, ti, gli, le, ci, vi** before it, and **loro** after it.

### PRESENT INDICATIVE

**mi cále, ti cále**, etc.

### IMPERFECT INDICATIVE

**mi caléva, ti caléva**, etc.

### PRETERIT

**mi calse, ti calse**, etc.

### PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

**mi cáglia, ti cáglia**, etc.

IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE  
mi **calésse**, ti **calésse**, etc.

PAST PARTICIPLE  
**calúto**.

In other tenses it is rarely used.

(Compound tenses are formed with **éssere**.)

5. **Dolére** (*refl.*), to complain, with its compound **condolére**, to condole, etc.

#### PRESENT INDICATIVE

mi **dólgo** (*or dóglio*), ti **duóli**, si **duóle**; ci **dogliámo**, vi **doléte**, si **dólgono** (*or dógliono*).

#### PRETERIT

mi **dólsi**, ti **dolésti**, si **dólse**; ci **dolémmo**, vi **doléste**, si **dólsero**.

#### FUTURE INDICATIVE

mi **dorrò**, ti **dorrái**, si **dorrà**; ci **dorrémo**, vi **dorréte**, si **dorránno**.

#### PRESENT CONDITIONAL

mi **dorréi**, ti **dorrésti**, si **dorrébbe**; ci **dorrémmo**, vi **dorréste**, si **dorrébbbero**.

#### IMPERATIVE

**duólit**i, **dólgasi** (*or dógliasi*)\*; **dogliámoci**, **dolétevi**, **dólgansi** (*or dógliansi*).\*

#### PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

mi **dólga** (*or doglia*) throughout the singular; ci **dogliámo**, vi **dogliáte**, si **dólgano** (*or dógliano*).

NOTE: When meaning *to ache, to be sorry*, **dolere** takes a dative pronoun, and is used only in the third person singular or plural.

Ex.: *mi duole il capo*, I have the headache; *mi dolgono i denti*, I have the toothache; *mi duole di non poter venire*, I am sorry not to be able to come.

(Compound tenses are formed with **éssere**.)

\* In the third person singular and plural, the pronoun may also precede.

6. **Dovére**, to owe (ought, must).

## PRESENT INDICATIVE

dévo *or* débbo (*or* déggio), dévi, déve; **dobbiámo** (*or* deggiámo), **dovéte**,  
 dévono *or* débbono (*or* déggiono).

## FUTURE INDICATIVE

dovrò, dovrái, dovrà; dovrémo, dovréte, dovránno.

## PRESENT CONDITIONAL

dovréi, dovrésti, dovrébbe; dovrémmo, dovréste, dovrébbero.

## PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

débba (*or* déggia) throughout the singular; **dobbiámo** (*or* deggiámo),  
 dobbiáte (*or* déggiate), débbero (*or* déggiano).

7. **Giacére**, to lie down, with its compound **soggiacére**, to succumb.

## PRESENT INDICATIVE

giáccio, **giáci**, **giáce**; **giacciámo**, **giacéte**, **giacciono**.

## PRETERIT

giácqui, **giacésti**, **giacque**; **giacémmo**, **giacéste**, **giacquero**.

## IMPERATIVE

**giáci**, **giaccia**; **giacciámo**, **giacéte**, **giacciano**.

## PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

**giaccia** (throughout the singular); **giacciámo**, **giacciáte**, **giacciano**.

## PAST PARTICIPLE

**giaciúto** (see § 128).

8. **Nuócere**, to hurt, harm.

## PRESENT INDICATIVE

**nuóco** *or* **nóccio** (*or* nuóccio), **nuóci**, **nuóce**; **nóciamo**, **nocéte**, **nuócono**  
*or* **nócciono** (*or* nuócciono).

## PRETERIT

**nócequi**, **nocésti**, **nóceque**; **nocémmo**, **nocéste**, **nóquero**.

The imperfect indicative, future indicative, present conditional, and imperfect subjunctive drop the **u** of the stem **nuoc-**, otherwise they are regular.

#### IMPERATIVE

**nuóci**, **nuóca** *or* **nóccia**; **nocíamo**, **nocéte**, **nuócano** *or* **nócciano**.

#### PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

**nuóca** *or* **nóccia** (throughout the singular); **nocíamo**, **nocíate**, **nuócano** *or* **nócciano**.

#### PRESENT PARTICIPLE

**nocéndo**.

#### PAST PARTICIPLE

**nocíúto** (see § 128).

NOTE: As a general rule it is perhaps preferable to omit the **u** of the diphthong **uo** whenever the stress does not fall upon it. Hence, instead of **tuonáva**, it thundered, **suonerà**, he will play, etc., we should say **tonáva**, **sonerà**, etc. The two verbs **nuotáre**, to swim, and **vuotáre**, to empty, retain the **u** in all forms so that they may not be confused with the verbs **notáre**, to note, and **votáre**, to vote.

### 9. **Parére**, to appear, seem.

#### PRESENT INDICATIVE

**páio**, **pári**, **páre**; **paíamo**, **paréte**, **páiono** (*or* **párono**).

#### PRETERIT

**párvi**, **parésti**, **párve**; **parémmo**, **paréste**, **párvero**.

#### FUTURE INDICATIVE

**parrò**, **parrái**, **parrà**; **parrémo**, **parréte**, **parránno**.

#### PRESENT CONDITIONAL

**parréi**, **parrésti**, **parrébbe**; **parrémmo**, **parréste**, **parrébbero**.

#### IMPERATIVE

**pári**, **páia**; **paíamo** *or* **pariámo**, **paréte**, **páiano**.

#### PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

**páia** (throughout the singular); **paíamo** *or* **pariámo**, **paiáte**, **páiano**.



## PAST PARTICIPLE

párso (*or* parúto).(Compound tenses are formed with *éssere*.)

10. **Piacére**, to please, and **dispiacére** or **spiacére**, to displease, are conjugated like **giacere**. Both verbs may be used impersonally with a dative of the object, and when so used they are rendered by forms of *to like*, and *to dislike*, or *to be glad* and *to be sorry* respectively.

11. **Pórre**,\* to put, with its compounds **dispórre**, to dispose, **compórre**, to compose, **indispórre**, to indispose, **propórre**, to propose, **antepórre**, to put before, prefer, **espórre**, to expose, **suppórre**, to suppose, etc.

## PRESENT INDICATIVE

póngo, póni, póne; poniámo, ponéte, póngono.

## IMPERFECT INDICATIVE

ponéva, ponévi, ponéva; ponevámo, poneváte, ponévano.

## PRETERIT

pósi, ponésti, póse; ponémmo, ponéste, pósero.

## FUTURE INDICATIVE

porrò, porrái, porrà; porrémo, porréte, porránno.

## PRESENT CONDITIONAL

porréi, porrésti, porrébbe; porrémmo, porréste, porrébbero.

## IMPERATIVE

póni, pónga; poniámo, ponéte, póngano.

\* It will be noticed that if the stem of the obsolete **pón-ere** is taken into account, the following forms would be regular: 2d and 3d sing. and 1st and 2d pl. of the *pres. ind.*; the *imp. ind.*; 2d sing. and 1st and 2d pl. of the *pret.*; 2d sing. and 1st and 2d pl. of the *imper.*; 1st and 2d pl. of the *pres. subj.*; the *imp. subj.*, and the *pres. part.* This applies also to the other verbs given above; as **dispón-ere**, etc.

## PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

póngā (throughout the singular); poniámo, poniáte, póngano.

## IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

ponéssi, ponéssi, ponésse; ponéssimo, ponéste, ponéssero.

## PRESENT PARTICIPLE

ponéndo.

## PAST PARTICIPLE

pósto.

12. **Scégliere**, to choose, with its compound **prescégliere**, to choose before, etc., and **sciógliere**, to dissolve, with its compounds **disciógliere**, to dissolve, **prosciógliere**, to absolve (from a vow, obligation, etc.), are conjugated like **cógliere**, see § 153.

13. **Sedére**, to sit down, with its compounds **risedére**, to reside, **posedére**, to possess, **presedére** (*presiédere* is a more common form, however), to preside, etc.

## PRESENT INDICATIVE

siédo (*or séggo*), siédi, siéde; **sediámo** (*or seggiámo*), **sedéte**, siédono (*or séggono*).

## IMPERATIVE

siédi, siéda *or ségga*; **sediámo** (*or seggiámo*), **sedéte**, siédano (*or séggano*).

## PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

siéda (*or ségga*) (throughout the singular); **sediámo** (*or seggiámo*), **sediáte**, siédano (*or séggano*).

14. **Solére** (defective), to be accustomed.

## PRESENT INDICATIVE

sóglio, suóli, suóle; **sogliámo**, **soléte**, sógliono.

## PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

sóglia (throughout the singular); **sogliámo**, **sogliáte**, sógliano.

## PAST PARTICIPLE

sólito.

NOTE: For the preterit, future indicative, present conditional, **essere solito** is used. The imperative is lacking.

15. **Svéllere**, to uproot, tear up, with its compound **disvéllere**, having a more intensive meaning than **svéllere**.

## PRESENT INDICATIVE

svélgo *or* svéllo, svélli, svélle; **svelliámo**, **svelléte**, svélgono *or* **svéllono**.

## PRETERIT

svélsi, **svellésti**, svélse; **svellémmo**, **svelléste**, svélsero.

## IMPERATIVE

svélli, svélga, *or* svélla; **svelliámo**, **svelléte**, svélgano *or* **svéllano**.

## PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

svélga *or* svélla (throughout the singular); **svelliámo**, **svelliáte**, svélgano *or* **svéllano**.

## PAST PARTICIPLE

svélto.

16. **Tacére**, to be silent, is conjugated like **giacére**.

17. **Tenére**, to keep, hold, with its compounds **ottenére**, to obtain, **contenére**, to contain, **trattenére**, to hold back, **appartenére**, to belong, **ritenére**, to retain, consider, etc.

## PRESENT INDICATIVE

téngo, tiéni, tiéne; **teniámo**, **tenéte**, téngono.

## PRETERIT

ténni, **tenésti**, ténne; **tenémmo**, **tenéste**, ténnero.

## FUTURE INDICATIVE

terrò, terrái, terrà; terrémo, terréte, terránno.

## PRESENT CONDITIONAL

terréi, terrésti, terrébbe; terrémmo, terréste, terrébbero.

## IMPERATIVE

tiéni, ténga; **teniámo**, **tenéte**, téngano.

## PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

ténga (throughout the singular); **teniámo**, **teniáte**, téngano.

18. **Tógliere**, to take away, with its compounds **ritógliere**, to retake, **distógliere**, to dissuade, etc., follows **cógliere**, see § 153.

19. **Trárre**, to draw, take out, with its compounds **contrárre**, to contract, **distrárre**, to distract, **sottrárre**, to subtract, **protrárre**, to protract, etc.

PRESENT INDICATIVE

trággo, trái, tráe (*or* trágge); traiámo (*or* traggiámo), traéte, trággono

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE

traéva, traévi, traéva; traevámo, traeváte, traévano.

PRETERIT

trássi, traésti, trásse; traémmo, traéste, trássero.

FUTURE INDICATIVE

trarrò, trarrái, trarrà; trarrémo, trarréte, trarránno.

PRESENT CONDITIONAL

trarréi, trarrésti, trarrébbe; trarrémmo, trarréste, trarrébbero.

IMPERATIVE

trái, trágga; traiámo (*or* traggiámo), traéte, trággano.

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

trágga (throughout the singular); traiámo (*or* traggiámo), traiáte (*or* traggiáte), trággano.

IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

traéssi, traéssi, traésse; traéssimo, traéste, traéssero.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

traéndo.

PAST PARTICIPLE

trátto.

20. **Valére**, to be worth, with its compound **prevalére**, to prevail, etc.

PRESENT INDICATIVE

válgo (*or* váglio), váli, vále; valiámo, valéte, válgono (*or* vágliono).

## PRETERIT

válsi, valésti, válse; valémmo, valéste, válsero.

## FUTURE INDICATIVE

varrò, varrái, varrà; varrémo, varréte, varránno.

## PRESENT CONDITIONAL

varréi, varrésti, varrébbe; varrémmo, varréste, varrébbero.

## IMPERATIVE

váli, váлга (or vágliа); valiámo, valéte, válgano (or vágliano).

## PAST PARTICIPLE

valúto or válso.

## 21. Volére, to be willing, want, will, wish.

## PRESENT INDICATIVE

vóglío or vo' (colloquial), vuói, vuóle; vogliámo, voléte, vógliono.

## PRETERIT

vólli, volésti, vólle; volémmo, voléste, vóllero.

## FUTURE INDICATIVE

vorrò, vorrái, vorrà; vorrémo, vorréte, vorránno.

## PRESENT CONDITIONAL

vorréi, vorrésti, vorrébbe; vorrémmo, vorréste, vorrébbero.

## IMPERATIVE

vógli (rare), vóglia; vogliámo, vogliáte, vógliano.

## PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

vóglia (throughout the singular); vogliámo, vogliáte, vógliano.

## IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION

The irregular verbs of the third conjugation are few in number. The following ones, unlike those given in Lessons XXIX and XXX, are but slightly irregular.

22. **Cucíre**, to sew, and its compounds **scucíre**, to unsew, **ricucíre**, to sew again, are conjugated regularly like **sentíre**, except that the stems **cuc-**, **scuc-**, etc., take **i** (**cuci-**, **scuci-**, etc.) before **a** or **o**, so as to preserve the soft sound of the **c**.

23. **Convertíre**, to convert, and **sovvertíre**, to subvert.

PRETERIT

**convertíi** (*or* **convérsi**), **convertísti**, **convertì** (*or* **convérse**); **convertímmo**, **convertíste**, **convertírono** (*or* **convérsero**).

PAST PARTICIPLE

**convertíto** (*or* **convérso**).

24. **Empíre**, to fill, and its compounds **riempíre**, to fill again, **compíre**, to perform, **adempíre**, to fulfil, are also spelled **émpiere**, **riémpiere**, **cómpiere**, **adémpiere**. The various tenses of these verbs are therefore formed by means of the stems **empi-**, **compi-**, **adempi-**, the **i** of the stem dropping before another **i**. The stems **emp-**, **comp-**, **ademp-** are used only when these verbs follow the conjugation of **pulíre** (§ 130).

25. **Istruíre**, to instruct, and all other verbs ending in **-struire**, are conjugated like **pulíre** (§ 130), with the following irregular forms in parentheses, in the preterit and past participle.

PRETERIT

**istruíi** (*or* **istrússi**), **istruísti**, **istruì** (*or* **istrússe**); **istruímmo**, **istruíste**, **istruírono** (*or* **istrússero**).

PAST PARTICIPLE

**istruíto** (*or* **istrútto**).

26. **Seppellíre**, to bury, is conjugated like **pulíre** (§ 130), but has two forms in the past participle: **seppellíto** (reg.) and **sepólto**.

## MATERIAL FOR COMPOSITION

The English of the following material for composition is of such character that it can readily be translated into readable Italian. It is designedly made not altogether idiomatic, since the difficulties of translation into Italian are in this way lessened. It is hoped that the frequent references to the Grammar will be found useful and that the omission of simple grammatical forms from the *Vocabulary* will not be missed.

*Remarks.*—*Prepositions that are to be followed by or fused with the article have been in most instances marked with a star. Small numbers indicate the respective order of the words in the sentence.*

### THE ORIGINS OF THE ITALIAN LANGUAGE

The affinities of the Italian and Latin languages are so manifest even to a superficial observer that it is not surprising if in the fifteenth<sup>2</sup> century<sup>1</sup> when the problem of the origin of the Italian language came to the attention of the scholars it was (si sia) naturally thought that Italian derives from Latin. This opinion was later strengthened by the evidence of so many facts that other hypotheses based on preconceptions and sustained more by\* imagination than by\* reason were (178) immediately left aside and soon forgotten. But until quite<sup>2</sup> recent<sup>3</sup> times<sup>1</sup> that derivation was understood in various ways: some (chi) explained it by way of a fusion of\* Latin with the language of the German invaders, and others (chi) as a mere corruption of literary<sup>2</sup> Latin<sup>1</sup>; some (chi) thought that Italian derived (*imp. subj.*) from Latin through an intermediate<sup>2</sup> language<sup>1</sup>, the so-called Roman (31) language; and others (chi), while (pure) getting near the truth, did not succeed (*imp. ind.*) because of the inexact acquaint-

ance with\* (di) facts and still more through the lack of a severe discipline in their interpretation to discern the true state of\* things. The clear<sup>2</sup> and final<sup>3</sup> solution<sup>1</sup> of the problem was (178) given only when the rigorous method of\* scientific<sup>2</sup> investigation<sup>1</sup> was (178) applied also to the study of\* languages and there was formed (137 and 178) a true science of\* language called linguistics or glottology. Of this science Frederick Diez, author of the famous *Grammar of the Romance<sup>2</sup> Languages<sup>1</sup>* was the great initiator. With him the new science turned to the study of\* Italian and of all (105) those languages which, as we will see later (in seguito), form with it (esso) a unique family, and so it was possible to (222) investigate the history and nature of\* sounds and to demonstrate with a (omit) sound method the prevalent and genuine Latin (31) element of the morphology, of the syntax and of the greatest part of the vocabulary of the Italian language. It must be remarked (193), however, that the problem of the origin of the Italian language is not yet solved in all (105) its details and very likely never will be.

In fact it is not reasonable to (222) expect that all the difficulties of so<sup>3</sup> complex<sup>4</sup> a<sup>1</sup> problem<sup>2</sup> could be (184, 4, and 185) cleared up. In the (omit) first place the evolution of a large number of words was often so capricious that even the most accurate investigation sometimes fails to retrace all (105) the successive changes of a given form. And in the (omit) second place there are instances in which (85) on account of insufficient data or for some (106, note) other reason there may be (possono esservi) disagreement (pl.) among\* scholars as to the way to (224) determine a given question.

Such a (112) disagreement (pl.), at any rate, is rare and is limited (137) to questions of details only, without in the least<sup>2</sup> injuring<sup>1</sup> (195) the merit of the scientific<sup>2</sup> method<sup>1</sup> inaugurated by (8, 4) Diez and perpetuated by the notable<sup>2</sup> contribution<sup>1</sup> of many other scholars. So that now all (105)



agree in admitting (194, 195) the theory that is here briefly expounded.

\* \* \*

It is certain that in Rome even when the literature reached (178) its highest splendor, the Latin spoken by the people in general differed (177, 1) greatly from the Latin (84) we are accustomed to read in the works of the great writers. As it always happens, the speech of the one (*quella*) among the cities of Latium that had (*imp. ind.*) extended its rule over the others, had (*imp. ind.*) undergone some slight modifications when it began (178) to (223) be put into writing (*iscritto*) for the simple reason that writing (194) is the direct<sup>2</sup> result<sup>1</sup> of (8, 2) reflection which (86) disciplines and controls the spontaneous act of common<sup>2</sup> talk<sup>1</sup>. It is also natural that the differences between the spoken<sup>2</sup> and the written<sup>3</sup> language<sup>1</sup> should be accentuated (*imp. subj.*, see 137) more and more owing to the inevitable tendency of the latter to (*ad*) make its own the good qualities of\* literary<sup>2</sup> form<sup>1</sup>. The gradual development of\* thought and the refinement of taste under the influence of\* Greek<sup>3</sup> literature<sup>1</sup> and (8, 4, note 1) art<sup>2</sup> contributed (178) largely to the formation of that literary language which appears perfectly constituted in the prose of the age of Cicero and Cæsar and in the poetry of the Augustan<sup>2</sup> age<sup>1</sup>.

But besides this literary Latin there was (117) also the spoken Latin, varied, of course, according to the social<sup>2</sup> standing<sup>1</sup> or the degree of culture of those who (89) used (177, 1) it. To-day we call it vulgar<sup>2</sup> Latin<sup>1</sup> but the ancients used to indicate (177, note) various gradations of it (60 and 61) with the names of *sermo plebeius*, *vulgaris*, *proletarius*, *rusticus*, *militaris*; or they used to call it with generic expressions *sermo cotidianus*, *usualis*; or else they would include (177, 1) under the name of *sermo urbanus* the many varieties of the language spoken in Rome just as to-day we

would speak of a Neapolitan<sup>2</sup> or Venetian<sup>3</sup> dialect<sup>1</sup> though we know that in Naples and in Venice the dialect of\* well bred<sup>2</sup> and more or less educated<sup>3</sup> persons<sup>1</sup> is not exactly identical with (a) that of\* drivers and boatmen (8, 4, note 1).

5 The expressions used by the ancients to which (86) we have just now alluded, induced (178) some (106, note) learned men to (a) believe that two languages existed (184, 3) in Rome: that of the written literature, well known to the cultured<sup>2</sup> classes<sup>1</sup>, and that of the people to whom (86) 10 the classical<sup>2</sup> Latin<sup>1</sup> was (177, 1) not accessible. This entirely<sup>2</sup> erroneous<sup>3</sup> opinion<sup>1</sup>, strange to say (a *dirsi*), Leonardo Bruni sustained in the fifteenth century with ridiculous arguments. The literary Latin and the vulgar Latin are 15 the art of the writers attained (178) greater clearness, more harmony of sounds, more regularity in the grammatical<sup>2</sup> construction<sup>1</sup>, greater elegance of expression; whereas from the lips of the people in general it continued (178) to (223) flow free and spontaneous. This fact, however, does not 20 imply any (106, note) sharp<sup>2</sup> partition<sup>1</sup> in the substance of the language (*insert* "and") nor does it mean that the exchanges between the more noble<sup>2</sup> variety<sup>1</sup> (*literary*<sup>2</sup> *Latin*<sup>1</sup>) and the numerous inferior<sup>2</sup> varieties<sup>1</sup> (*vulgar*<sup>2</sup> *Latin*<sup>1</sup>) were (*imp. subj.*) interrupted.

25 The learned as well as the persons of the upper classes spoke (177, 1) naturally a tongue more like that of the written literature, while the illiterate and the common persons, both in the pronunciation and in the grammatical construction, deviated (177, 1) more and more from the 30 literary language. But just as the learned in the familiar<sup>2</sup> style<sup>1</sup> or when writing (*imp. ind.*) about matters of little importance adhered to the popular<sup>2</sup> talk<sup>1</sup> both in the simpler construction of the sentence and in the less<sup>2</sup> studied<sup>3</sup> choice<sup>1</sup> of\* words, so a man of the people, speaking with a patrician,

must have (180 and 135) tried hard to imitate the regularity of the grammar and the clearness of the sounds which he would hear (177, 1) in the language spoken by the cultured<sup>2</sup> classes<sup>1</sup>. Thus in the various gradations of\* vulgar Latin there took place (177, 1) a sort of fusion represented by the language of the middle<sup>2</sup> classes<sup>1</sup> of the city.

The Latin of Rome could (**poteva**) not escape the slow and continuous transformations that are inherent in (a) all (105) spoken<sup>2</sup> languages<sup>1</sup>. And so it is not possible to determine the characteristics of\* vulgar Latin without taking (195) into account the time in which (85) such characteristics appeared (178). But here rises the grave difficulty of indicating with precision the epoch to which we refer ourselves in the study of the characteristics mentioned above. And such a difficulty is brought about by the scarcity of\* first hand<sup>2</sup> documents<sup>1</sup>, that is to say of texts in which the genuine<sup>1</sup> popular<sup>3</sup> forms<sup>2</sup> are (*pres. subj.*) preserved. By means of keen and sound deductions that often find confirmation in the language of\* inscriptions and of other perfectly<sup>2</sup> reliable<sup>3</sup> records<sup>1</sup>, science has succeeded (118) in a certain measure in (a) fixing (195) the aspect of\* vulgar Latin. And here, in (a) explanation of what (87) is said above, we shall make a few (106) remarks on the phonetic<sup>2</sup>, grammatical<sup>3</sup> and lexical<sup>4</sup> elements<sup>1</sup> which characterized it in the classical<sup>2</sup> age<sup>1</sup>.

\* \* \*

Already in the third century B. C. the pronunciation of some final<sup>2</sup> consonants<sup>1</sup> was (177, 1) more or less weakened: the *d* after a long<sup>2</sup> vowel<sup>1</sup> (as in *sententiad*, *datod*, *facilumed*), the *m*, the *s*. The literary<sup>2</sup> language<sup>1</sup> dropped (178) the *d*, and although it preserved (184, 8) the other two letters, their (68, *note*) pronunciation was considerably weakened (137 and 178). In the spoken<sup>2</sup> Latin<sup>1</sup>, however, this process continued (178), favored in certain instances by the posi-

tion which those sounds occupied (177, 1); so that already long before the fall of the Republic the final *d* was silent (177, 1), and in the second century A. C., the *-m* and the *-s* had (118) almost entirely disappeared. Thus the phonic<sup>2</sup> group<sup>1</sup> *-ns-* in the body of\* words after a long<sup>2</sup> vowel<sup>1</sup> had (118) become quite early a mere *s* giving place to forms like *mesem*, *sposum*, in contrast with the literary forms *mensem*, *sponsum*. In the literary language, long *i* and short *i* preserved (178) their (68, *note*) quantitative<sup>2</sup> identity<sup>1</sup>, but in  
 10 the spoken Latin the short *i* turned (178) very soon into (ad) *e*, in virtue of that general<sup>2</sup> tendency<sup>1</sup> whereby the pronunciation of the short<sup>2</sup> vowels<sup>1</sup> assumed a more open (32) sound and that of the long vowels a (*omit*) more<sup>2</sup> closed<sup>3</sup> one<sup>1</sup>.

With regard to\* morphology we may observe that about  
 15 (intorno a) the same time the pronouns *ille*, *iste*, *ipse*, had (*imp. ind.*) probably lost their demonstrative<sup>2</sup> force<sup>1</sup>, so that the need<sup>2</sup> was felt<sup>1</sup> (137, 178) of strengthening (195) them by (*omit*) connecting (*use gerund*) them with *ecce* or *eccum* (*eccum-istum*, It. *questo*), and besides there was (117, 178)  
 20 a tendency to (a) use them as adjectives in the cases where the classical<sup>2</sup> Latin<sup>1</sup> usually left (177, 1) the noun isolated (*illa rosa*, *la rosa*). And many other examples could (191) be cited (137) to this end if for the sake of brevity we were (*imp. subj.*) not compelled to pass on.

25 What (87) occurred (177, 1) in the case of the sounds and forms (8, 4, *note*) occurred also in the case of the vocabulary. Of two words expressing the same thing or the same idea, the literary Latin would sometimes give (177, 1) the preference to one, while the other would prevail in the  
 30 spoken Latin. Usually they would write (102, 177, 1) *equus*, *adiuare*, *os*, *ignis*, *ebrius*, *edere*; but speaking, the majority would say (177, 1) *caballus*, *adiutare*, *bucca*, *focus*, *briacus*, *manducare*.

So far we have only observed the conditions prevalent in Rome. We must now turn our attention to the regions that fell (178) under her rule. Each (104, *note*) of these had in the beginning a speech of its own, but after the Roman (31) conquest the speech of Rome finally prevailed (178, 218) 5 everywhere. This is doubtless one of the most wonderful<sup>2</sup> facts<sup>1</sup> in (44) the history of Rome and a convincing<sup>2</sup> proof<sup>1</sup> of that power of assimilation of the ancient Romans whereby so many peoples were (178) united in the sentiment of a common<sup>2</sup> country<sup>1</sup>. Wherever the rule of Rome spread, 10 small colonies of Roman citizens were established (137) and thus the speech of (8, 3) Latium or vulgar Latin of which we have spoken was little by little transplanted into the other provinces of Italy and into the countries beyond the Alps and the sea. In fact we may consider such (112) col- 15 onies as forming at first so many (*altrettante*) linguistic<sup>2</sup> islands<sup>1</sup> against which (86) broke (177, 1) the waves (*sing.*) of\* indigenous language (*pl.*). For the conquered felt (178) the necessity of uniting (195) with the Roman settlers who were much more civilized than (40, 2) they (*loro*) and in (a) 20 whom (86) was centered (177, 1) the administrative<sup>2</sup> and economic<sup>3</sup> life<sup>1</sup> of the community. So feared and respected was (177, 1) the name of Rome and such was the influence exerted by\* Roman (31) civilization that the greatest ambition of these foreigners was to (*di*) become Roman citizens. 25 Thus, while the old national<sup>2</sup> sentiment<sup>1</sup> of the conquered (32) provinces disappeared more or less rapidly before a broader nationalism, their<sup>2</sup> speech<sup>3</sup> also<sup>1</sup> yielded to\* Latin, which finally became (178, 218) the only language spoken by the subject<sup>2</sup> populations<sup>1</sup>. 30

\* \* \*

The vulgar Latin, however, was thus necessarily exposed to inevitable modifications, because the foreigners who spoke it (177, 1) were certainly bound (*imp. ind.*) to (221) transfer

to (**in**) it (**esso**) some (106) of the particular<sup>2</sup> characteristics<sup>1</sup> of their primitive<sup>2</sup> language<sup>1</sup>. In the Gallic (31) provinces, for instance, where the Celtic language gave (177, 1) more emphasis than (40, 2) Latin to the accented<sup>2</sup> syllables<sup>1</sup>,  
 5 the tendency to\* syncope was doubtless favored. We may also add that, diffused (200) over so vast<sup>3</sup> an<sup>1</sup> extent<sup>2</sup> as that of the Roman empire, vulgar Latin could (177, 1) not remain uniform everywhere. Yet, two chief<sup>2</sup> causes<sup>1</sup> maintained (178) a comparative uniformity in the language of  
 10 the Roman<sup>2</sup> world<sup>1</sup>: the thorough centralization of the Empire which caused incessant relations and exchanges between the provinces and the capital<sup>2</sup> city<sup>1</sup>; and the glorious literature, the influence of which made<sup>2</sup> (177, 1) itself<sup>1</sup> (**si**) felt (*inf.*) even to (**in**) the remotest regions.

15 But with the disintegration of the Empire, from the fifth century on (**in poi**), the linguistic<sup>3</sup> unity<sup>2</sup> also<sup>1</sup> disappeared (178). In many territories where the Roman rule was (178) of short duration or the force of expansion and the influence of Roman civilization were not deeply felt, vulgar Latin dis-  
 20 appeared (178) in the course of\* centuries. In those territories on the contrary where the process of\* romanization was (178) not interrupted, vulgar Latin struck (178) root firmly. But the various shades which formerly characterized it in the different places, became (178) well marked  
 25 differences, so that later the forms of vulgar Latin were as numerous as (41) the regions where it was (177, 1) spoken.

So, these various forms of vulgar Latin are nothing but the ancient forms of the languages spoken<sup>2</sup> to-day<sup>1</sup> in the countries where Roman<sup>3</sup> civilization<sup>2</sup> prevailed<sup>1</sup> (178). The  
 30 languages of these countries (Spain, Portugal, France, the ancient Rætia, Italy, Rumania), because of their common origin, form to-day a single group known under (**con**) the name of Romance<sup>2</sup> Languages<sup>1</sup>. The most important Romance languages are six: Portuguese, Spanish, French, Pro-

vençal, which was in the Middle Ages the literary language of Southern<sup>2</sup> France<sup>1</sup>, Italian and Rumanian.

Now it is altogether impossible to (222) assign an exact<sup>2</sup> date<sup>1</sup> to the origin of the Romance languages; the transition from vulgar Latin to the new language took place (178) by 5 (per) a process of slow evolution. Nor (nè) would it be logical to consider the date of the first records of a certain language as a sure sign of its origin.

On account of its glorious tradition, Latin was (178) for a (omit) long time the official<sup>2</sup> language<sup>1</sup> used everywhere; it 10 was (177, 1) learned in the schools and the Church itself (stessa) had (imp. ind.) adopted it (61); it was thus the only language used in\* writing (scrittura, f. pl.). But in the course of\* time this<sup>2</sup> literary<sup>4</sup> Latin<sup>3</sup> also<sup>1</sup> was transformed (137, 178) into an inferior<sup>3</sup> literary<sup>2</sup> language<sup>1</sup> known by 15 (con) the name of *low Latin*; which (86) though it remained (184, 8) faithful to some extent to the rules of\* classical Latin takes from all (104) sides, but from vulgar Latin above all, syntactical<sup>2</sup> forms<sup>1</sup>, suffixes and words. When the transformation of\* vulgar Latin was (178) far advanced and 20 the Romance languages were already spoken (137, 177, 1), those who wrote (177, 1) without having (195) a moderate culture (and this was the condition of the majority) could (imp. ind.) not observe the rules of\* grammar and still less attain even a tolerable correctness in the spelling and in the 25 proper use of\* words. Forms and expressions of the spoken language were freely used in such writings and it is exactly in these that as far back as the sixth century the traces of the Romance languages begin to (223) appear.

\* \* \*

With reference to Italy we (102) may say that at the 30 close of the Republic Latin<sup>2</sup> was spoken<sup>1</sup> (137, 177, 1) in all (105) the provinces. And we know that these very (stesso,

---

*adj.*) provinces had given to\* Latin<sup>2</sup> literature<sup>1</sup> writers like Varro, Sallust, Catullus, and to the literature of imperial<sup>2</sup> Rome<sup>1</sup>, Virgil, Horace, Livy, Ovid and Propertius. Later, for the same reasons that we have already exposed, the unity  
 5 of\* spoken Latin was (*andò*) rapidly modified (*refl. gerund*) and in the course of\* time the differences of speech among the various provinces became (178) more and more noticeable and they finally gave (218) form to the Italian dialects of to-day. It is true that the invasions of the barbarians,  
 10 by (*omit*) creating conditions opposed to\* culture, hastened (178) this evolution of vulgar Latin, but nowhere did they succeed in (*ad*) altering (195) its (*translate* "of it"; 60, 61) substance and interior organism.

\* \* \*

After having (195) briefly stated the origin of the Italian  
 15 (31) dialects we shall try to (224) see how the literary<sup>3</sup> language<sup>2</sup> was formed<sup>1</sup> (137, 178); the language that is now understood and spoken from one end to the other of Italy; the language that was styled *il volgare* in opposition to\* Latin.

20 Toward the close of the Middle Ages the intensity of the political<sup>2</sup>, social<sup>3</sup> and economic<sup>4</sup> life<sup>1</sup>, the frequent military<sup>2</sup> expeditions<sup>1</sup>, the fairs, the pilgrimages, etc., established between the provinces and the centers of population closer relations and more active exchanges. Persons speaking (*par-*  
 25 *lanti*) different dialects met frequently, and because of the natural desire to (*di*) understand each other (138) more easily they would attenuate (177, 1) in the conversation certain striking peculiarities of their dialects. It was therefore natural for (*che*) the dialects of neighboring<sup>2</sup> regions<sup>1</sup> to fuse  
 30 (186, *refl.*) with each other (*insieme*). And since those who (89) wrote (177, 1) for the public would naturally try (177, 1) to extend the circle of\* readers, it is clear that the language



in which they were writing (177, *note*) was bound to (221) exert a unifying<sup>2</sup> effect<sup>1</sup>.

At the court of Frederick the Second (54, 2) in Sicily, this tendency towards a unification of the dialects received (178) an extraordinary impulse. There (*quivi*) from every (104) 5 part of Italy and especially from the southern<sup>2</sup> provinces<sup>1</sup> many men of letters came to (223) enjoy the sumptuous hospitality of the prince. It is therefore easy to (222) imagine how from the daily<sup>2</sup> conversations<sup>1</sup> of these cultured<sup>2</sup> men<sup>1</sup> a literary language was elaborated (137, *imp. subj.*) which 10 also, on account of the uniform<sup>2</sup> character<sup>1</sup> of its splendid poetry of love, seemed to be then the common language of Italy.

Those who frequented the court of Frederick the Second used (177, 1) their own (*proprio*) dialects (*sing.*), but every 15 one (104, *note*) would try to (224) avoid in speaking and writing (194, 195) not only the words and expressions that (*omit*) were (*omit*) too common but also those which on account of their local<sup>2</sup> character<sup>1</sup> would not have been easily understood by all. And since in their poems all (105) these 20 men of letters confined themselves (177, 1) within a narrow circle of subjects and of ideas, many expressions were crystallized by\* (*per*) frequent<sup>2</sup> use<sup>1</sup> into a fixed<sup>2</sup> form<sup>1</sup>.

By means of such (112) elaboration the dialects of Southern<sup>2</sup> Italy<sup>1</sup> used at the Sicilian (31) court developed into a 25 language which, though varied in its elements, was at any rate uniform in many respects. The influence exerted by the Sicilian school lasted (178) for some (106, *note*) time even after the death of Frederick the Second (1250), but in the meantime a more vigorous awakening of\* thought was 30 taking place (177, *note*) in Tuscany where the wonderful prosperity due to the flourishing industries and (8, 4, *note* 1) commerce was accompanied by (a) a genial and brilliant revival of the arts.

- The language used by the poets of the Sicilian court was in turn modified by the contributions (*sing.*) of the Tuscan dialects and enriched with (*di*) new forms and words by the Tuscan copyists who had already rendered (179) possible  
5 the diffusion of the Sicilian lyrics. Tuscany, in short, owing to its geographical<sup>2</sup> position<sup>1</sup>, could (*imp. ind.*) more easily exert the influence of its dialect which blends in exact degree the harshness of the northern<sup>2</sup> dialects<sup>1</sup> and the softness of the southern (*pl.*).
- 10 Such was (*imp. ind.*) the state of\* things when suddenly the genius of Dante Alighieri raised (178) the dialect of the principal city of Tuscany to the dignity of being (*omit*) the (*omit*) literary language of the nation. The Tuscan language was then forever molded by a poem which all Italians soon  
15 considered (178) as their sacred<sup>2</sup> book<sup>1</sup>. Later Petrarch and Boccaccio (8, 4) and other minor writers, all Florentines in (*di*) language if not in (*di*) birth, reenforced the work of Dante; so that from then on the Florentine dialect, enriched by (*di*) elements derived from other dialects, and restrained  
20 by its own (*stessa*) literary tradition, has constituted the Italian language.

## **GENERAL VOCABULARIES**

## ABBREVIATIONS

*adv.* adverb  
*adj.* adjective

*pl.* plural  
*v.* verb

*refl* reflexive  
*m.* masculine  
*f.* feminine

A dash (—) indicates the repetition of the Italian or English word.

## ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

### A

abbandonâre, to abandon.  
 abbastânza, enough.  
 abbondânte, abundant.  
 accadére, to happen.  
 accêndere, to light.  
 accettâre, to accept.  
 accônto, *m.*, account.  
 accôrdo, *m.*, agreement.  
 accôrgersi, to notice, perceive.  
 âcqua, *f.*, water  
 âcre, bitter, savor.  
 addúrre, to allege, cite.  
 adêssô, now.  
 Adriâtico, *m.*, Adriatic (sea).  
 affâre, *m.*, affair, business.  
 affâtto, at all.  
 affrânto, overcome.  
 agíre, to act.  
 agôsto, *m.*, August.  
 aiutâre, to help.  
 aiúto, *m.*, help.  
 allégro, cheerful.  
 allúdere, to allude, hint.  
 Âlpi, *f. pl.*, Alps.  
 alpín-o (-a), Alpine.  
 âlt-o (-a), high.  
 altriménti, otherwise.  
 alzâre, to raise; (*si*), to rise.  
 amâre, to love.  
 american-o (-a), American.  
 amic-o (-a), friend

ammalât-o (-a), patient (*sick person*).  
 amôre, *m.*, love.  
 ânce, also.  
 ancôra, yet, still.  
 andâre, to go; andârsene, to go away.  
 ângolo, *m.*, corner.  
 animaziône, *f.*, stir, animation.  
 ânno, *m.*, year.  
 apparíre, to appear.  
 appartenére, to belong.  
 appassionât-o (-a), fond.  
 appéllo, *m.*, roll-call.  
 appéna, scarcely, as soon as.  
 appetíto, *m.*, appetite.  
 applicâre, to apply.  
 apríre, to open.  
 âquila, *f.*, eagle.  
 ârab-o (-a), Arab, Arabian.  
 arância, *f.*, orange (fruit).  
 arâncio, *m.*, orange-tree.  
 ârdere, to burn (*used also intransitively*).  
 argomênto, *m.*, argument.  
 âria, *f.*, air.  
 aristocrâtic-o (-a), aristocratic.  
 armoniôs-o (-a), harmonious.  
 arrivâre, to arrive.  
 ârte, *f.*, art.  
 ârtículo, *m.*, article.  
 ârtísta, *m., f.*, artist.  
 ârtístic-o (-a), artistic.  
 ascoltâre, to listen.

aspettare, to wait (for), await.  
 assái, very; much.  
 assénte, absent.  
 assénza, *f.*, absence.  
 assicuráre, to assure.  
 assuefáre (si), to accustom, adapt.  
 assumere, to assume.  
 atróce, atrocious.  
 attént-o (-a), attentive.  
 attóre, *m.*, actor.  
 attríce, *f.*, actress.  
 áure-o (-a), golden.  
 avvertíre, to warn.  
 avvocáto, *m.*, lawyer.  
 azzardós-o (-a), risky, hazardous.

## B

bánc-o, *m.*, bench; bank.  
 bastáre, to be enough.  
 báttete, to beat, knock.  
 baúle, *m.*, trunk.  
 béll-o (-a), beautiful.  
 benchè, although.  
 béne, well; di — in méglío, better and better.  
 biánc-o (-a), white.  
 bibliotéca, *f.*, library.  
 bigliétto, *m.*, ticket, card.  
 bisognáre, to be necessary.  
 bollíre, to boil.  
 bontà, *f.*, goodness.  
 bósc-o, *m.*, wood.  
 bottéga, *f.*, shop, store.  
 bréve, brief; fra —, soon.  
 bríndisi, *m.*, toast.  
 búe (see § 7, 7).  
 buón-o (-a), good.

## C

cálc-o, *m.*, calculation.  
 cáld-o (-a), warm.

cambiamént-o, *m.*, change.  
 cámera, *f.*, room.  
 campáña, *f.*, country (fields).  
 cámp-o, *m.*, field.  
 candidát-o (-a), candidate.  
 cannóne, *m.*, gun.  
 cantáre, to sing.  
 cánt-o, *m.*, canto.  
 canzóne, *f.*, song.  
 capacità, *f.*, capacity.  
 capíre, to understand.  
 capitáno, *m.*, captain.  
 capitoláre, to surrender.  
 cappéllo, *m.*, hat.  
 cár-o (-a), dear.  
 carrózza, *f.*, carriage.  
 cárta, *f.*, paper.  
 cása, *f.*, house.  
 cáso, *m.*, case; a —, at random, by chance.  
 cattív-o (-a), bad.  
 cáut-o (-a), cautious, prudent.  
 cavállo, *m.*, horse.  
 cédere, to yield.  
 céntro, *m.*, center.  
 cercáre, to look for, try.  
 certaménte, certainly.  
 cért-o (-a), certain; *adv.*, certainly.  
 chiacchieráre, to talk, chatter.  
 chiamáre, to call.  
 chiédere, to ask (for).  
 ciárla, *f.*, idle talk (*rare in the singular*).  
 ciélo, *m.*, heaven.  
 circostánza, *f.*, circumstance.  
 città, *f.*, city.  
 cittadinánza, *f.*, citizenship.  
 civíle, civil.  
 civiltà, *f.*, civilization.  
 clásse, *f.*, class.  
 clíma, *m.*, climate.

colónia, *f.*, colony.  
 colpevolézza, *f.*, guilt.  
 cóme, *as*, how.  
 commerciále, commercial.  
 commercialménte, commercially.  
 commerciánte, *m.*, merchant.  
 comméttere, to commit.  
 commóss-o (-a), touched.  
 cómod-o (-a), comfortable.  
 comperáre, to buy.  
 competénte, competent.  
 compétere, to compete.  
 cómpito, *m.*, task; written lesson.  
 comúne, common.  
 concérto, *m.*, concert.  
 condúrre, to lead, conduct.  
 conflítto, *m.*, conflict.  
 consíglío, *m.*, counsel, advice.  
 contentáre, to satisfy.  
 contént-o (-a), satisfied, glad.  
 continuáre, to continue.  
 contrátto, *m.*, contract.  
 cóntro, against.  
 conversazióne, *f.*, conversation.  
 convíncere, to convince.  
 copiáre, to copy.  
 copríre, to cover.  
 corággio, *m.*, courage.  
 córsa, *f.*, race.  
 córso, *m.*, course.  
 cósa, *f.*, thing.  
 cosí, *so*, thus; such a.  
 costáre, to cost, be worth.  
 costruzióne, *f.*, construction.  
 créscere, to grow.  
 cristián-o (-a), Christian.  
 crítico, *m.*, critic.

## D

davánti(a), before.  
 davvéro, indeed.

denáro, *m.*, money.  
 desístere, to desist.  
 difficile, difficult, hard.  
 difficoltà, *f.*, difficulty.  
 diligénte, diligent.  
 dimenticáre (si), to forget.  
 díre, to say; modo di —, saying.  
 dirítto, *m.*, right, law.  
 disástro, *m.*, disaster.  
 discésa, *f.*, descent.  
 discussióne, *f.*, discussion.  
 disturbáre, to disturb.  
 dizionário, *m.*, dictionary.  
 dóllaro, *m.*, dollar.  
 dolóre, *m.*, grief.  
 dománda, *f.*, question, request.  
 domandáre, to ask (for).  
 dománi, to-morrow.  
 dormíre, to sleep.  
 dottrína, *f.*, doctrine.  
 dóve, where.  
 dovére, *m.*, duty.  
 dozzína, *f.*, dozen; a —, board-  
 ing.  
 dubitáre, to doubt.  
 duránte, during.

## E

eccitáre, to excite.  
 effétto, *m.*, effect.  
 elegánte, elegant.  
 eleganteménte, elegantly.  
 entráre (*followed by in*), to enter.  
 equatoriále, equatorial.  
 éra, *f.*, era, epoch.  
 eróe, *m.*, hero.  
 erróre, *m.*, error, mistake.  
 esáme, *m.*, examination.  
 esército, *m.*, army.  
 esercízio, *m.*, exercise.

esiliáre, to exile.  
 esperiënza, *f.*, experience.  
 estáte, *f.*, summer.  
 evitáre, to avoid.

## F

fa (*see* § 53).  
 fáciie, easy.  
 facilménite, easily.  
 famíglia, *f.*, family.  
 famós-o (-a), famous.  
 fanciúll-o (-a), boy, (girl).  
 faticós-o (-a), hard.  
 fáttó, *m.*, fact, event, deed.  
 favóre, *m.*, favor.  
 felice, happy.  
 férro, *m.*, iron.  
 ferroviári-o (-a), railroad, *adj.*  
 fésta, *f.*, feast.  
 fila, *f.*, line, row.  
 filósofo, *m.*, philosopher.  
 finále, final.  
 finchè, until.  
 finéstra, *f.*, window.  
 fióre, *m.*, flower.  
 fiúme, *m.*, river.  
 fólla, *f.*, crowd.  
 fondáre, to found, establish.  
 fónđo, *m.*, fund.  
 fórse, perhaps.  
 fórté, strong.  
 fórza, *f.*, force, strength.  
 fra, between, among, in.  
 fratéllo, brother.  
 frédd-o (-a), cold.  
 frésc-o (-a), fresh.  
 frétta, *f.*, haste; *aver* —, to be in  
 a hurry.  
 fuóco, *m.*, fire.  
 fuóri, out, outside.

## G

generále, *m.*, general; *adj.*,  
 general.  
 génere, *m.*, kind.  
 gentíle, kind.  
 gentilménite, kindly.  
 gentiluómo, gentleman.  
 già, already.  
 giacchè, since.  
 giardíno, *m.*, garden.  
 gigantésc-o (-a), gigantic.  
 giocáre, to play.  
 giornále, *m.*, newspaper.  
 giòrno, *m.*, day.  
 giòvane, young; *m.*, young man;  
*f.*, young woman.  
 giováre, to help.  
 giudicáre, to judge.  
 giuóco, *m.*, game.  
 gloriós-o (-a), glorious.  
 godére, to enjoy.  
 grammática, *f.*, grammar.  
 gránde, large, great.  
 grát-o (-a), grateful.  
 grázie, *f. pl.* of grázia, thanks  
 guadagnáre, to earn, gain.  
 guánto, *m.*, glove.  
 guérra, *f.*, war.  
 guída, *f.*, guide.  
 gústó, *m.*, taste.

## I

idéa, *f.*, idea.  
 iéri, yesterday.  
 imméns-o (-a), immense.  
 imparáre, to learn.  
 impauríre, to frighten.  
 imperatóre, emperor.  
 imperdonábile, unpardonably.



importánte, important.  
 importánza, *f.*, importance.  
 imposizióne, *f.*, imposition.  
 imprudénza, *f.*, imprudence.  
 incantévole, enchanting.  
 incominciáre, to begin.  
 incontráre, to meet.  
 incoraggiánte, encouraging.  
 indipendénza, *f.*, independence.  
 indirizzáre, to address.  
 indispóst-o (-a), indisposed (ill).  
 indízio, *m.*, sign.  
 industriále, industrial.  
 inézia, *f.*, trifle.  
 infér-m-o (-a), patient (*sick person*).  
 influén-te, influent.  
 informazióne, *f.*, information.  
 ingrésso, *m.*, entrance.  
 inquilín-o (-a), dweller (*tenant*).  
 insístere, to insist.  
 insopportábile, unbearable.  
 intáto, meanwhile, while.  
 intelligén-te, intelligent.  
 intéto, *m.*, design, intent.  
 interessáre, to interest.  
 interésse, *m.*, interest.  
 interrogáre, to question.  
 interveníre, to attend.  
 inútile, useless.  
 invitáre, to invite.  
 invitat-o (-a), guest.  
 invíto, *m.*, invitation.

## L

lágo, *m.*, lake.  
 lagúna, *f.*, lagoon.  
 lasciáre, to leave, let.  
 laváre, to wash.  
 lavoráre, to work.

lavóro, *m.*, work.  
 léttera, *f.*, letter; *pl.*, literature,  
     fine letters.  
 letteratúra, *f.*, literature.  
 létto, *m.*, bed.  
 lezióne, *f.*, lesson.  
 liberamén-te, freely.  
 líber-o (-a), free.  
 libertà, *f.*, liberty.  
 líbro, *m.*, book.  
 língua, *f.*, language.  
 líric-o (-a), lyric.  
 lontán-o (-a), far; *adv.*, far.  
 lótt-a, *f.*, strife, contest.  
 lúme, *m.*, light.  
 lúng-o (-a), long; *adv.*, along.

## M

ma, but.  
 maéstro, *m.*, teacher.  
 mággio, *m.*, May.  
 maggióre, greater, elder.  
 mái, ever; non . . . —, never.  
 mále, *adv.*, bad, badly; *m.*, evil;  
     far —, to hurt.  
 mandáre, to send.  
 mangiáre, to eat.  
 máno, *f.*, hand.  
 marína, *f.*, navy.  
 mássim-o (-a), greatest.  
 matéria, *f.*, subject.  
 mattína, *f.*, morning.  
 médico, *m.*, doctor.  
 méglio, *adv.*, better.  
 méla, *f.*, apple.  
 méno, less; nè più nè —, no  
     more, no less.  
 méntre, while.  
 meravigliós-o (-a), wonderful.  
 mercáto, *m.*, market; a buon —,  
     cheap.

**mérito**, *m.*, merit.  
**mése**, *m.*, month.  
**metállo**, *m.*, metal.  
**méttere**, to put; (*si*), to put on;  
     (*si followed by a*), to begin.  
**mézzo**, *adj.*, half; *m.*, half, means.  
**míca**, **non** . . . —, not . . . at  
     all, not . . . in the least.  
**miglio**, *m.*, mile.  
**miglioráre**, to improve.  
**miglióre**, *adj.*, better.  
**minístro**, *m.*, minister.  
**minóre**, smaller, minor.  
**minúto**, *m.*, minute.  
**misúra**, *f.*, measure.  
**modérn-o** (*-a*), modern.  
**módo**, *m.*, way, manner.  
**mólt-o** (*-a*), *adj.*, much; *pl.*,  
     many; *adv.*, very.  
**moménto**, *m.*, moment.  
**móndo**, *m.*, world.  
**món-te**, *m.*, mountain.  
**moríre**, to die.  
**motívo**, *m.*, motive, reason.  
**muséo**, *m.*, museum.

## N

**naturále**, natural.  
**náve**, *f.*, ship; — **da guér-ra**, war-  
     ship.  
**nazióne**, *f.*, nation.  
**nè**, — . . . —, neither . . . nor,  
     no . . . no.  
**necessári-o** (*-a*), necessary.  
**necessità**, *f.*, necessity.  
**neglígere**, to neglect.  
**nipóte**, *m.*, nephew; *f.*, niece.  
**no** (*used only as opposite of sì*,  
     yes), no.  
**nóme**, *m.*, name.

**non**, not, no.  
**notízia**, *f.*, news.  
**nótte**, *f.*, night; **iéri** —, last night.  
**núbe**, *f.*, cloud.  
**núlla**, *adv.*, nothing; *m.*, nothing.  
**número**, *m.*, number.  
**nuóv-o** (*-a*), new.

## O

**o**, or.  
**occasióne**, *f.*, occasion.  
**ódio**, *m.*, hatred.  
**offríre**, to offer.  
**óggi**, to-day.  
**onóre**, *m.*, honor.  
**operáio**, *m.*, workman.  
**opinióne**, *f.*, opinion.  
**opportunità**, *f.*, opportunity.  
**opportún-o** (*-a*), opportune, right.  
**óra**, *f.*, hour, time; *adv.*, now.  
**orário**, *m.*, time-table; in —, on  
     time.  
**oratóre**, *m.*, orator.  
**órdine**, *m.*, order.  
**óro**, *m.*, gold.

## P

**pádre**, father.  
**padrón-e**, *m.*, master; *-a*, *f.*,  
     mistress.  
**paesággio**, *m.*, landscape.  
**paése**, *m.*, country.  
**pagáre**, to pay.  
**página**, *f.*, page.  
**págli-a**, *f.*, straw.  
**pallóne**, *m.*, balloon.  
**párco**, *m.*, park.  
**parécchi-o** (*-a*), much; *pl.*, many.  
**parére**, to appear, seem.  
**parláre**, to speak.  
**paróla**, *f.*, word.

- párte**, *f.*, part.  
**partíre**, to leave, depart.  
**partíta**, *f.*, game.  
**partíto**, *m.*, party.  
**passáre**, to pass.  
**passeggiáre**, to take a walk.  
**passeggiáta**, *f.*, walk.  
**passéggio**, *m.*, walk.  
**pásso**, *m.*, step; passage.  
**patíbolo**, *m.*, gallows.  
**patrióttá**, *m.*, patriot.  
**paúra**, *f.*, fear.  
**paziénza**, *f.*, patience.  
**peccáto**, *che* —, too bad.  
**pedagógo**, *m.*, pedagogue (*instructor*).  
**péggio**, *adv.*, worse.  
**pénna**, *f.*, pen.  
**pensáre**, to think.  
**perchè**, why, because, so that.  
**perciò**, therefore.  
**pérdere**, to lose.  
**perícolo**, *m.*, danger.  
**período**, *m.*, period.  
**persíno**, even.  
**persóna**, *f.*, person.  
**personalménte**, personally.  
**piacévole**, pleasing.  
**piáno**, *m.*, plan.  
**piánta**, *f.*, tree.  
**píccol-o** (-a), small.  
**pittorésc-o** (-a), picturesque.  
**più**, more.  
**platéa**, *f.*, orchestra (*pit of a theater*).  
**plausíbile**, plausible.  
**po'**, **póco**, *adj.*, little; *m.*, (a) little, a few; *adv.*, little, a little while.  
**poéma**, *m.*, poem.  
**poéta**, *m.*, poet.  
**poi**, then, afterwards.  
**polític-o** (-a), political.  
**polizía**, *f.*, police.  
**pompiére**, *m.*, fireman.  
**popolarità**, *f.*, popularity.  
**popolazíone**, *f.*, population.  
**pópolo**, *m.*, people.  
**popolós-o** (-a), populous.  
**pórta**, *f.*, door.  
**possedére**, to possess.  
**possíbile**, possible.  
**pósta**, *f.*, mail, post-office.  
**pósto**, *m.*, place.  
**poténte**, powerful.  
**potére**, to be able, can.  
**póver-o** (-a), poor; *m.*, *f.*, pauper.  
**pránzo**, *m.*, dinner.  
**práto**, *m.*, meadow.  
**preferíre**, to prefer.  
**préndere**, to take.  
**preoccupáre**, to preoccupy.  
**presentáre**, to present.  
**presidén-te**, *m.*, president.  
**présto**, soon; hurry up.  
**prevedére**, to foresee.  
**previsíone**, *f.*, prevision.  
**preziós-o** (-a), precious.  
**príma**, before; — **di** or **che**, before.  
**privazíone**, *f.*, privation.  
**probábile**, probable.  
**procésso**, *m.*, trial.  
**progétto**, *m.*, project.  
**progredíre**, to progress.  
**progrésso**, *m.*, progress.  
**prónt-o** (-a), ready.  
**pronúncia**, *f.*, pronunciation.  
**proporzíone**, *f.*, proportion.  
**propósito**, *m.*, purpose.  
**propósta**, *f.*, proposition.  
**próprio**, *adv.*, just.  
**prosperità**, *f.*, prosperity.

prosperós-o (-a), prosperous.  
 próssim-o (-a), next.  
 provérbio, *m.*, proverb.  
 província, *f.*, province.  
 provvedére, to provide.  
 pubblicáre, to publish.  
 púnto, *m.*, point; *adv.*, (not) . . .  
     at all.  
 púre, however, yet (*often redundant*).

## Q

quándo, when.  
 cuánt-o (-a), how much; *pl.*, how  
     many.  
 quási, almost, nearly.  
 questioné, *f.*, question.

## R

raccólto, *m.*, crop.  
 raccontáre, to tell, relate.  
 raffreddóre, *m.*, cold.  
 ragázz-o (-a), boy, (girl).  
 ragióne, *f.*, reason.  
 rappresentazióne, *f.*, performance.  
 re, king.  
 recenteménte, recently.  
 regióné, *f.*, region.  
 regolarménte, regularly.  
 repentin-o (-a), sudden.  
 responsabilità, *f.*, responsibility.  
 restáre, to remain.  
 restituíre, to give back.  
 rícc-o (-a), rich.  
 ricévere, to receive.  
 ricordáre (si), to remember.  
 ridáre, to give again, restore.  
 rifáre, to do again.  
 riferíre, to refer, disclose.  
 rifiúto, *m.*, refusal.

riflettére, to reflect.  
 rifugiársi, to take refuge.  
 rimanére, to remain.  
 rimédio, *m.*, remedy.  
 rincasáre, to come or go home.  
 rinomát-o (-a), famous.  
 ripétere, to repeat.  
 ripréndere, to retake, resume.  
 riputazióne, *f.*, reputation.  
 ríso, *m.*, laughter (*f. pl.*, *risa*).  
 risórta, *f.*, resource.  
 rispóndere, to answer.  
 risultáre, to result.  
 ritárido, in —, late.  
 ritiráta, *f.*, retreat.  
 ritornáre, to return.  
 riunióne, *f.*, reunion, meeting.  
 riuscíre, to succeed.  
 ríva, *f.*, shore, bank.  
 rivísta, *f.*, review.  
 rivólgere (si), to turn, apply.  
 román-o (-a), Roman.  
 romanziére, *m.*, novelist.  
 románzo, *m.*, novel.  
 rósa, *f.*, rose.  
 rotónd-o (-a), round.  
 rumóre, *m.*, noise.

## S

salário, *m.*, salary.  
 salíre, to go up, rise.  
 salutáre, to salute.  
 salúte, *f.*, health.  
 salváre, to save.  
 sán-o (-a), healthy.  
 sbagliáre (si), to mistake.  
 scárs-o (-a), scarce.  
 schiáv-o (-a), slave.  
 scioperánte, *m. f.*, striker.  
 sciópero, *m.*, strike.

**scolár-o** (-a), pupil.  
**scónto**, *m.*, discount.  
**scrítto**, *m.*, writing.  
**scrívere**, to write.  
**scuóla**, *f.*, school.  
**sécolo**, *m.*, century.  
**sédia**, *f.*, chair.  
**seguíre**, to follow.  
**séguito**, in — a, on account of,  
 owing to, after.  
**sembráre**, to appear, seem.  
**sémpre**, always.  
**sentíre**, to hear, feel.  
**sénza**, without.  
**séra**, *f.*, evening.  
**seriamén-te**, seriously.  
**séri-o** (-a), serious; **sul** —, seriously.  
**servíre**, to serve.  
**servízio**, *m.*, service.  
**settimána**, *f.*, week.  
**severità**, *f.*, severity.  
**sfortunatamén-te**, unfortunately.  
**sfórzo**, *m.*, effort.  
**significáto**, *m.*, meaning.  
**símile**, similar, such.  
**sodisfacén-te**, satisfactory.  
**sóle**, *m.*, sun.  
**soltáto**, only.  
**sópra**, upon, above.  
**soprábito**, *m.*, overcoat.  
**sopréndere**, to surprise.  
**sostenére**, to sustain, maintain,  
 support, uphold.  
**sparíre**, to disappear.  
**specialmén-te**, especially.  
**speculazióne**, *f.*, speculation.  
**speráre**, to hope.  
**spéss-o**, often.  
**spléndere**, to shine.  
**spléndid-o** (-a), splendid.

**spettácolo**, *m.*, spectacle.  
**stamáne**, this morning.  
**stáre**, to stay, dwell.  
**staséra**, this evening.  
**stazióne**, *f.*, station.  
**sténto**, *m.*, hardship; a —, with  
 difficulty.  
**stéss-o** (-a), same.  
**stória**, *f.*, history.  
**storiélla**, *f.*, anecdote.  
**stráda**, *f.*, street, road.  
**straniér-o** (-a), foreigner; *adj.*,  
 foreign.  
**strán-o** (-a), strange.  
**strenuamén-te**, strenuously.  
**studiáre**, to study.  
**stúdio**, *m.*, study.  
**studiós-o** (-a), studious.  
**súbito**, immediately.  
**succédere**, to happen.  
**suóno**, *m.*, sound.  
**svilúppo**, *m.*, development.

## T

**tacére**, to be silent.  
**tále**, such (§ 112).  
**talvólta**, sometimes.  
**tánt-o** (-a), so much; *pl.*, so  
 many; *adv.*, so much.  
**tárdi**, late.  
**távola**, *f.*, table.  
**teátro**, *m.*, theater.  
**teléfono**, *m.*, telephone.  
**témpo**, *m.*, time, weather.  
**temporále**, *m.*, storm.  
**terribile**, terrible.  
**tesóro**, *m.*, treasure.  
**testárd-o** (-a), headstrong.  
**tórto**, *m.*, wrong (§ 121).  
**trattáre**, to treat.

**tréno**, *m.*, train.  
**tróppo**, too, too much.  
**trovára**, to find, visit.

## U

**uffício**, *m.*, office.  
**últim-o** (-a), last.  
**únic-o** (-a), unique, only.  
**università**, *f.*, university.  
**uómo**, man (§ 7, 7).  
**uscíre**, to go *or* come out.  
**útile**, useful.  
**utilità**, *f.*, usefulness.

## V

**vacánza**, *f.*, vacation.  
**valorosaménte**, bravely.  
**ván-o** (-a), vain.

**vécchi-o** (-a), old; *m.*, old man;  
*f.*, old woman.  
**vedére**, to see.  
**velóce**, fast.  
**véndere**, to sell.  
**venerdì**, *m.*, Friday.  
**veníre**, to come.  
**ventúr-o** (-a), next, coming.  
**veraménte**, truly, really.  
**vér-o** (-a), true.  
**vérso**, toward.  
**vestíre**, to dress.  
**vicín-o** (-a), near.  
**vísita**, *f.*, visit.  
**víso**, *m.*, face.  
**víta**, *f.*, life.  
**vittória**, *f.*, victory.  
**volentiéri**, willingly.  
**vólta**, *f.*, (a) time.

# ENGLISH—ITALIAN VOCABULARY

## A

a, an, un, úno, *m.*; úna, *f.*

about, intórno a; su; to be —  
(to), stáre per.

above, di sópra; — all, soprat-  
tútto.

absence, assénza, *f.*

**A. C.**, di Crísto, (abbr.) di C.

accented, accentáto.

accentuate, *v.*, accentuáre.

accept, *v.*, accettáre.

accessible, accessibile.

accompanied, to be — by, accom-  
pagnársi-a.

according, — to, secóndo.

account, on—of, per; to take  
into—, tenér cónto di.

accurate, accuráto.

accustomed, to be — to, ésser.  
sólito.

acquaintance, conoscénza.

acquainted, to be — with, co-  
nóscere.

act, átto.

action, azióne, *f.*

active, attívo.

adapt, *v.*, assuefársi, *refl.*

add, *v.*, aggiúngere.

address, indirízso.

adhere, *v.*, accostársi.

adjective, aggettívo.

administrative, amministratívo.

admit, *v.*, ammétttere.

adopt, *v.*, adottáre.

advanced, *see* far.

advice, consíglío.

advise, *v.*, consigliáre.

affinity, affinità.

afraid, to be — of, temére or  
avér paúra (di) (§ 121).

after, dopo.

again, di nuóvo.

against, cóntro.

age, età.

ago, fa.

agree, *v.*, andáre d'accórdo or  
accordársi.

air, ária.

all, tútto, *adj.*; at —, affátto;  
not . . . at — (*see* § 170).

allude, *v.*, accennáre.

almost, quási.

Alps, Álpi, *f.*, *pl.*

already, già.

also, ánche.

alter, *v.*, alteráre.

although, benchè.

altogether, del tútto, assolu-  
tamén-te.

always, sémpre.

ambition, ambizióne, *f.*

American, americáno.

among, fra.

ancient, antíco (*adj.* and *noun*).

and, e (often *ed* before a vowel).

answer, rispósta.

**answer**, *v.*, rispóndere.  
**any**, (partitive, § 85); — or —  
 one, alcúno, *adj.*; — . . .  
 more (§ 170).  
**appear**, *v.*, apparíre, mostrársi.  
**appearance**, apparénza.  
**apply**, *v.*, applicáre.  
**architecture**, architettúra.  
**argument**, argométo.  
**arrive**, *v.*, arriváre.  
**army**, esército.  
**art**, árte, *f.*  
**article**, artículo.  
**as**, cóme; — . . . —, così . . .  
 cóme or tánto . . . quánto;  
 — to, su.  
**aside**, *see* leave.  
**ask**, *v.*, domandáre, chiédere.  
**aspect**, aspétto.  
**assign**, *v.*, fissáre.  
**assimilation**, assimilazióne, *f.*  
**assume**, *v.*, assúmere.  
**assure**, *v.*, assicuráre.  
**at**, a.  
**attain**, *v.*, raggiúngere.  
**attention**, atenzióne, *f.*; to  
 turn our —, vólger lo sguár-  
 do; *see* come.  
**attenuate**, *v.*, attenuáre.  
**Augustan**, augustéo.  
**aunt**, zía.  
**author**, autóre, *m.*  
**avoid**, *v.*, evitáre.  
**awakening**, risvéglío.  
**away**, to go —, andársene.

## B

**bad**, cattívo.  
**bank**, ríva (shore); báncó.  
**barbarian**, bárbaro.

**based**, basáto.  
**B. C.**, A. C. (Avánti Crísto).  
**be**, *v.*, éssere.  
**beautiful**, bello.  
**because**, perchè; — **of**, per.  
**become**, *v.*, diveníre.  
**bed**, létto.  
**before**, práma (in time); da-  
 vánti a (in place); *see* long.  
**begin**, *v.*, incomiciáre.  
**beginning**, princípío; in the —,  
 dappríma.  
**believe**, *v.*, crédere.  
**belong**, *v.*, appartenére.  
**besides**, óltre a ciò; accánto a.  
**best**, (il) miglióre, *adj.*; (il)  
 méglío, *adv.*  
**better**, miglióre, *adj.*, méglío,  
*adv.*  
**between**, fra.  
**beyond**, al di là di.  
**big**, gránde.  
**birth**, náscita.  
**bitter**, amáro, ácre.  
**blend**, *v.*, temperáre.  
**blessing**, grázia di Dío or for-  
 túna.  
**blow**, *v.*, — out, spégneré.  
**boat**, bárcá.  
**boatman**, barcaiólo.  
**body**, córpo.  
**boil**, *v.*, bollíre.  
**book**, líbro.  
**both**, — . . . **and**, sía. . . .  
 che.  
**bottle**, bottíglia.  
**bound**, to be — to, *v.*, dovére.  
**boy**, fanciúlo, ragázzo.  
**break**, rómpere; (intr.), frán-  
 gersi.



breakfast, colazione, *f.*  
 brevity, brevità.  
 briefly, brevemente.  
 brilliant, smagliante.  
 brother, fratello.  
 broad, ampio.  
 brought, to be — about, nascere.  
 build, *v.*, fabbricare.  
 but, *ma* (*see* § 172, and **nothing**).  
 by, *da*.

## C

cab, carrózza.  
 Caesar, Césare.  
 call, *v.*, chiamáre; díre.  
 called, *so* —, cosiddétto.  
 can, *v.*, potére.  
 candidate, candidáto.  
 cane, bastóne, *m.*  
 capital, capitále.  
 capricious, capriccioso.  
 captain, capitáno.  
 carriage, carrózza.  
 carrier, letter —, postíno.  
 case, caso.  
 cashier, cassiére, *m.*  
 cat, gátto.  
 catch, *v.*, préndere.  
 Catullus, Catúllo.  
 cause, cáusa.  
 cause, *v.*, causáre, determináre.  
 Celtic, céltico.  
 cent, sóldo.  
 center, céntro.  
 centered, to be —, *far* cápo.  
 century, sécolo.  
 certain, cértó.  
 certainly, certaménte.  
 change, cambiaménto.  
 change, *v.*, cambiáre.  
 character, caráttere, *m.*

characteristic, caráttere, *m.*  
 characterize, caratterizzáre.  
 cheap, *a* buón mercáto.  
 cheerful, allégro.  
 cherry, ciliégia.  
 chief, cápo; *adj.*, principále.  
 choice, scélta.  
 choose, *v.*, scégliere.  
 Church, Chiésa.  
 Cicero, Ciceróne.  
 circle, cérchia.  
 cite, *v.*, citáre.  
 citizen, cittadíno.  
 city, città.  
 civilization, civiltá.  
 civilized, civilizzáto.  
 class, clásse, *f.*  
 classical, clássico.  
 clean, *v.*, pulíre.  
 clear, chiáro.  
 cleared, — *up*, chiaríto.  
 clearness, chiarézza.  
 climate, clima, *m.*  
 close, chiúso, íntimo (*intimate*).  
 close, fine, *f.*, cadúta (*fall*).  
 close, *v.*, chiúdere.  
 coffee, caffè, *m.*  
 cold, fréddo; also *adj.* (*see* §§ 121 and 141).  
 colony, colónia.  
 color, colóre, *m.*  
 come, veníre; — *to the attention of*, presentársi *a*; — *back*, ritornáre; — *out*, uscíre; — *up*, salíre.  
 commerce, comércioio.  
 commercial, commerciále.  
 commercially, commercialménte.  
 common, comúne; rózzo (*uneducated*).  
 community, comunità.

**comparative**, relativo.  
**compel**, *v.*, costringere.  
**complain**, *v.*, lamentarsi; *refl.*  
**complex**, complesso.  
**condition**, condizione, *f.*  
**conduct**, *v.*, condurre.  
**confine**, *v.*, — one's self, ag-  
 girarsi.  
**confirmation**, conferma.  
**connect**, *v.*, unire.  
**connection**, rapporto.  
**conquer**, *v.*, conquistare.  
**conquered**, the —, i vinti.  
**conquest**, conquista.  
**consider**, *v.*, considerare.  
**considerably**, notevolmente.  
**consideration**, considerazione, *f.*  
**consonant**, consonante. *f.*  
**constitute**, *v.*, costituire.  
**construction**, costruzione, *f.*  
**continue**, *v.*, continuare.  
**continuous**, continuo.  
**contract**, contratto.  
**contradict**, contraddire.  
**contrary**, contrario; on the —,  
 invéce.  
**contrast**, in — with, di fronte a.  
**contribute**, *v.*, contribuire.  
**contribution**, contributo.  
**control**, *v.*, frenare.  
**controversy**, controversia.  
**conversation**, conversazione, *f.*  
**convince**, *v.*, convincere.  
**convincing**, convincente.  
**copyist**, copista, *m.*  
**correctness**, correttezza.  
**corruption**, corruzione, *f.*  
**cost**, *v.*, costare.  
**cottage**, villa.  
**could**, *v.*, potére.  
**counsel**, consiglio.

**country**, paese, *m.*; (fields),  
 campagna; (fatherland), pá-  
 tria.  
**couple**, páio.  
**courage**, coraggio.  
**courageous**, coraggioso.  
**course**, corso; of —, s'inténde,  
 naturalmente.  
**court**, córte, *f.*  
**cover**, *v.*, coprire.  
**create**, *v.*, creare.  
**crystallized**, cristallizzato.  
**criticism**, critica.  
**crowd**, folla.  
**culture**, coltura.  
**cultured**, colto.  
**custom**, costume, *m.*  
**customer**, avventóre, *m.*

## D

**d** (*pronounced di*), *m.*  
**daily**, quotidiano.  
**day**, giorno.  
**data**, cognizioni, *f., pl.*  
**date**, data.  
**death**, morte, *f.*  
**debt**, débito.  
**deceive**, *v.*, ingannare.  
**decide**, *v.*, decidere.  
**deduction**, deduzione, *f.*  
**deeply**, profondamente.  
**degree**, grádo; exact —, giústo  
 equilibrio.  
**delicate**, delicato.  
**demonstrate**, *v.*, dimostrare.  
**demonstrative**, dimostrativo.  
**deny**, *v.*, smentire.  
**departure**, parténza.  
**derivation**, derivazione, *f.*  
**derive**, *v.*, derivare.

deserve, *v.*, meritáre.  
 desire, desidério.  
 desk, scrittóio.  
 detail, particuláre, *m.*  
 determine, *v.*, determináre.  
 develop, *v.* (intr.), congua-  
 gliársi.  
 development, svilúppo.  
 deviate, *v.*, scostársi.  
 dialect, dialétto.  
 die, *v.*, moríre.  
 differ, *v.*, — greatly, ésser ben  
 divérso.  
 difference, differénza.  
 different, divérso, differénte.  
 difficult, diffícile.  
 difficulty, difficoltà.  
 diffused, diffúso.  
 diffusion, diffusióne, *f.*  
 dignity, dignitá.  
 dinner, pránzo.  
 direct, dirétto.  
 disagreement, discrepánza.  
 disappear, sparíre, scomparíre.  
 disaster, disástro.  
 discern, *v.*, scérnere.  
 discipline, disciplína.  
 discipline, *v.*, disciplináre.  
 disease, mále, *m.*  
 disintegration, with the — of,  
 sfasciátosi (§ 200).  
 dissolve, *v.*, sciógliere.  
 distinct, distínto.  
 divine, divíno.  
 do, *v.*, fare.  
 doctor, dottóre, *m.*; dottoréssa, *f.*  
 document, documénto.  
 dollar, dóllaro.  
 door, pórtá.  
 doubt, dúbbio.  
 doubtless, indubbiáménte.

dozen, dozzína.  
 drama, drámma, *m.*  
 dress, *v.*, vestíre.  
 driver, faccheráio.  
 drop, *v.*, lasciár cadére (cadére  
*is, of course, invariable*).  
 due, dovúto, *adj.*  
 duration, duráta.  
 during, duránte.  
 dwell, *v.*, abitáre.

**E**

each, ciascún-o (-a); — other,  
 l'un l'áltro or gli úni gli ál-  
 tri.  
 early, presto; quite —, assái per  
 témpo.  
 earth, térra.  
 easily, facilménte.  
 east, est, *m.*  
 easy, fácele.  
 eat, *v.*, mangiáre.  
 economic, económicó.  
 edition, edizióne, *f.*  
 educated, istruíto.  
 effect, effétto.  
 effort, sfórzo.  
 egg, uóvo.  
 elaborate, *v.*, elaboráre.  
 elaboration, elaborazióne, *f.*  
 elegance, elegánza.  
 elegant, elegánte.  
 element, eleménto.  
 else, áltro; or —, oppúre.  
 emphasis, riliévo.  
 empire, impéro.  
 enchanting, incantévole.  
 encouraging, incoraggiánte.  
 end, cápo; to this —, in ri-  
 guárdo.

English, inglése.  
 enjoy, *v.*, godére.  
 enough, abbastánza.  
 enrich, *v.*, arriechíre.  
 enter, *v.*, entráre (in).  
 enterprising, intraprendénte.  
 entirely, del tútto, affátto.  
 epoch, época.  
 erroneous, erróneo, falso.  
 escape, *v.*, sottrársi a.  
 especially, specialménte.  
 establish, *v.*, stabilíre.  
 even, ánche.  
 evening, séra; this —, staséra.  
     (*for* quésta séra.)  
 ever, mái.  
 every, ógni; — one, ognún-o  
     (-a).  
 everybody, tútti (-e).  
 everything, tútto.  
 everywhere, dappertútto.  
 evidence, evidénza.  
 evolution, evoluzióne, *f.*  
 exact, esátto; *see* degree.  
 exactly, appúnto, próprio.  
 examination, esáme, *m.*  
 example, esémpio.  
 exception, eccezióne, *f.*  
 exchange, scámbio.  
 excuse, scúsa.  
 exercise, esercízio.  
 exert, *v.*, esercitáre.  
 exist, *v.*, esístere.  
 expansion, espansióne, *f.*  
 expect, *v.*, aspettáre, preténdere.  
 expedition, spedizióne, *f.*  
 experience, esperiénza.  
 explain, *v.*, spiegáre.  
 explanation, spiegazióne, *f.*  
 expose, *v.*, espórrere.  
 expounded espósto, *adj.*

express, *v.*, esprimere.  
 expressing, espriménte, *adj.*  
 expression, espressióne, *f.*;  
     (*idiom*). locuzióne, *f.*  
 extend, *v.*, allargáre, sténdere.  
 extent, estensióne, *f.*; to some  
     —, in pártte.  
 extraordinary, straordinário.

## F

fact, fátto; in —, infátti.  
 fail, *v.*, non riuscíre (a).  
 failure, falliménto.  
 fair, fiéra.  
 faithful, fedéle.  
 faithfully, fedelménte.  
 fall, cadúta.  
 fall, *v.*, cadére.  
 familiar, famigliáre.  
 family, famíglia.  
 famous, famóso, célebre.  
 far, so —, finóra; — advanced,  
     mólto avanzáto (-a); as —  
     back as, fino da.  
 farm, podére, *m.*  
 fast, velóce.  
 father, pádre.  
 favor, favóre, *m.*  
 favor, *v.*, favoríre.  
 fear, paúra.  
 fear, *v.*, temére (*see* § 121).  
 feel, *v.*, sentíre; — bad, well,  
     star mále, béne.  
 few, a —, póchi (-e).  
 fifteenth, decimoquínto.  
 fight, *v.*, combáttere.  
 final, finále (*ending*); definitívo  
     (*definitive*).  
 finally, finalménte (§ 218).  
 find, *v.*, trováre.

**fine, bello (§ 26).**

**finish, v., finire.**

**fire, fuoco.**

**firmly, fermamente.**

**first, primo; at —, dapprima;**  
*see hand.*

**fish, v., pescare.**

**fix, v., fissare.**

**fixed, inalterabile, adj.**

**fleet, flotta.**

**floor, piano.**

**Florentine, fiorentino.**

**flourishing, fiorente, adj.**

**flow, v., scorrere.**

**flower, fiore, m.**

**foot, piede, m.; on —, a piedi.**

**for, per; poich  (because).**

**farce, farsa.**

**foreigner, straniero.**

**forever, per sempre.**

**forget, v., dimenticare (used al-**  
*so refl.).*

**form, forma.**

**formation, formazi ne, f.**

**formerly, prima.**

**forming, formante, adj.**

**fountain, fontana.**

**franc, lira.**

**France, Francia.**

**Frederick, Federico.**

**free, libero.**

**freely, liberamente.**

**French, francese.**

**frequent, frequente.**

**frequent, v., frequentare.**

**frequently, di frequente.**

**friend, amico.**

**from, da.**

**fuse, v., fondere.**

**fusion, fusione, f.**

**G**

**Gallic, g llico.**

**garden, giardino.**

**general, generale.**

**generally, generalmente.**

**generic, gen rico.**

**generous, generoso.**

**genial, geniale.**

**genius, g nio.**

**gentleman, signore, gentiluomo.**

**genuine, schietto.**

**geographical, geografico.**

**German, germanico (7, 3)**

**get, v., prendere; — up, alzarsi;**  
**— near, accostarsi a.**

**give, v., dare.**

**glad, contento.**

**glass, bicchiere, m.**

**glorious, glorioso.**

**glottology, glottologia.**

**glove, guanto.**

**go, v., andare; — out, uscire;**  
**— away, andarsene.**

**God, Dio.**

**gold, oro.**

**good, buono (§ 28).**

**gradation, gradazione, f.**

**gradual, graduale.**

**grammar, grammatica.**

**grammatical, grammaticale.**

**grant, v., concedere.**

**grateful, grato.**

**grave, grave.**

**great, grande (§§ 27, 38, 46)**

**greatly, di molto.**

**Greek, greco.**

**group, gruppo.**

**guide, guida.**

**gun, cannone, m.**

## H

half, mézzo, *adj.*; metà, *f.*,  
mézzo, *m.*  
hand, máno, *f.*; at first —, di-  
rétto, *adj.*  
handkerchief, fazzolétto.  
happen, *v.*, accadére, avveníre,  
succédere.  
happy, felice.  
hard, faticóso, difficile, *adv.*, di-  
rottaménte; *see* try.  
harmony, armonía.  
harshness, asprézza.  
hasten, *v.*, affrettáre.  
hat, cappéllo.  
have, *v.*, avére.  
head, tésta, cápo; — ache, mal  
di cápo.  
health, salúte, *f.*  
hear, *v.*, sentíre, udíre.  
help, *v.*, aiutáre.  
here, quí.  
high, álto.  
history, stória.  
holiday, giòrno di fésta.  
home, cása.  
honesty, onestà.  
honor, onóre, *m.*  
hope, speránza.  
Horace, Orázio.  
horror, orróre, *m.*  
horse, cavállo.  
hospitality, ospitalità.  
hour, óra.  
house, cása.  
hovel, capánna, casúccia.  
how, cóme; — much, quánto  
(-a); — many, quánti (-e).  
however, però.

hurriedly, di frétta, in frétta.  
hurt, *v.*, far mále, feríre.  
hypothesis, ipótesi, *f.*

## I

idea, idéa, concétto.  
identical, idéntico.  
identity, identitá.  
if, se.  
illiterate, the —, gli ignoránti.  
imagination, immaginazione, *f.*  
imagine, *v.*, immagináre.  
imitate, *v.*, imitáre.  
immediate, immediáto.  
immediately, súbito.  
immense, imménso.  
imperial, imperiále.  
imply, *v.*, implicáre.  
importance, importánza.  
important, importánte.  
impossible, impossíbile.  
impostor, impostóre, *m.*, bugiár-  
do.  
impression, impressióne, *f.*  
impulse, impúlso.  
in, in (§ 44); a (*before names  
of cities*).  
inaugurated, inauguráto.  
incessant, incessánte.  
include, *v.*, comprendere.  
indeed, davvéro.  
indescribable, indescrivíbile.  
indicate, *v.*, indicáre, designáre.  
indifferent, indifferénte.  
indigenous, indígeno.  
induce, *v.*, indúrre.  
industrious, industrióso.  
industry, indústria.  
inevitable, inevitábile.  
inexact, inesátto.

**inferior**, inferioré.

**influence**, influénza, inflússu.

**inform**, *v.*, informáre.

**information**, informazióne, *f.*

**inhabitant**, abitánte, *m.*

**inherent**, inerénte.

**initiator**, iniziatóre. *m.*

**injure**, *v.*, menomáre.

**inscription**, iscrizióne, *f.*

**instance**, cáso; **for** —, per esém-  
pio.

**insufficient**, insufficiénte.

**intend**, *v.*, inténdere.

**intensity**, intensità.

**interior**, íntimo.

**intermediate**, intermédio.

**interpretation**, interpretazióne, *f.*

**interrupt**, interrómpere.

**into**, in.

**introduce**, *v.*, presentáre, intro-  
durre.

**invader**, invasóre, *m.*

**invasion**, invasióne, *f.*

**invent**, *v.*, inventáre.

**investigate**, *v.*, indagáre.

**investigation**, indáGINE, *f.*

**invitation**, invító.

**island**, ísola.

**isolated**, isoláto.

**Italian**, italiáno.

**Italy**, Itália.

**ivy**, édera.

**J**

**jasmine**, gelsomíno.

**jeweler**, gioiellière, *m.*

**judge**, *v.*, giudicáre.

**just**, — **as**, cóme; — **now**, or  
óra.

**K**

**keen**, acúto.

**kind**, gentíle, *adj.*

**kind**, género, *m.*, qualità.

**king(s)**, re.

**knock**, *v.*, báttere.

**know**, *v.*, sapére; conóscere (*to  
be acquainted with*).

**known**, nóto, *adj.*

**L**

**lack**, mancánza.

**lady**, signóra; **young** —, signo-  
rína.

**lamp**, lámpada, lucérna.

**landscape**, paesággio.

**language**, língua; (*spoken lan-  
guage*), linguággio.

**large**, gránde.

**largely**, assái.

**last**, último; scórso *or* passáto  
(*past*); — **night**, iéri séra.

**last**, *v.*, perduráre.

**late**, tárdi, *adv.*

**later**, più tárdi.

**Latin**, latíno.

**Latium**, Lázio.

**latter**, the —, quest'último (—a).

**laugh**, *v.*, rídere.

**lawyer**, avvocáto.

**lead**, *v.*, condúrre.

**leader**, cápo.

**leading**, principál, *adj.*

**learn**, *v.*, imparáre

**learned**, dótto; — **man**, dótto.

**least**, mínimo, *adj.*; **at** —, al-  
ménó; **in the** —, affátto.

**leave**, *v.*, lasciáre (*abandon*):  
partíre (*depart*); — **aside**,  
lasciár da páрте.

leg, gamba.  
 less, ménò.  
 lesson, lezióne, *f.*  
 let, *v.*, affittàre, (*rooms, etc.*);  
     lasciàre (*leave, permit*).  
 letter, lèttera; *see* carrier.  
 lexical, lessicàle.  
 liberty, libertà.  
 library, bibliotéca.  
 life, víta.  
 like, cóme, *adv.*; more —, più  
     próssimo a.  
 likely, probabilménte.  
 limited, to be —, limitàrsi.  
 linguistics, linguística.  
 lip, lábbro, *pl.*, lábbra, *f.*  
 listen, *v.*, ascoltàre.  
 literary, letteràrio.  
 literature, letteratúra; written  
     — scrittúre, *f.*, *pl.*  
 little, piccolo, *adj.*; póco, *adv.*;  
     — by —, vía vía; a — while  
     ago, póco fa.  
 live, *v.*, vívere; abitàre ( *dwell*).  
 Livy, Lívio.  
 local, locále.  
 logical, lógico.  
 long, lúngo; how —, quánto  
     témpo; — before, assái práma  
     di.  
 look, *v.*, guardàre; — for, cer-  
     càre.  
 lose, *v.*, pérdere.  
 lot, a — of, mólto, *adj.*  
 love, amóre, *m.*  
 love, *v.*, amàre.  
 low, báссо.  
 lyric, lírica.

## M

m (*pron. émmè*), *m.*  
 mail, *v.*, impostàre.  
 main, principàle, *adj.*  
 maintain, *v.*, mantenére.  
 majority, the —, i più.  
 make, *v.*, fàre; — one's own, ap-  
     propriàrsi.  
 man, uómo (§ 7.7); young —,  
     gióvane; — of letters, let-  
     teràto.  
 manifest, manifésto.  
 many, mólti (—e); so —, tánti  
     (—e); *see* how.  
 marked, marcàto.  
 master, padróne.  
 matter, affàre, *m.*, faccènda; ar-  
     goménto.  
 May, mággio.  
 may, *v.*, potére.  
 mean, *v.*, significàre.  
 meaning, significàto.  
 means, by — of, per vía di.  
 meantime, frattémpo.  
 measure, misúra.  
 medal, medáglià.  
 meet, *v.*, incontràre; (*intr.*) in  
     contràrsi.  
 meeting, riunióne, *f.*  
 mention, *v.*, accennàre.  
 merchant, commerciànte, *m.*  
 mere, sèmplice.  
 merit, mérito.  
 metal, metállo.  
 method, método.  
 metropolis, metrópoli, *f.*  
 middle, médio; Middle Ages,  
     médio évo.  
 mild, míte.  
 mile, míglio (§ 7.6).



**military**, militare.  
**minor**, minóre.  
**minute**, minúto.  
**Mr.**, signór (-e); **Mrs.**, signóra.  
**Miss**, signorína.  
**miss**, *v.*, mancáre.  
**mistake**, sbáglio.  
**moderate**, discrétó.  
**modern**, modérno.  
**modification**, modificazióne, *f.*  
**modify**, *v.*, modificáre.  
**moment**, moménto.  
**money**, denáro.  
**more**, piú; — **and** —, sémpré piú.  
**morning**, mattína; **this** —, stamáne.  
**morphology**, morfología.  
**most** (44).  
**moulded**, sancíto.  
**much**, mólto (-a), *adj.*; mólto, *adv.*, assái, *adv.*; **how** —, quánto; **as** — **as** (*see* § 41, *note* 2).  
**muddy**, fangóso.  
**must**, *v.*, dovére; **it** — **be** (*and a past part.*); bisógna (*and an inf.*).

# N

**name**, nóme, *m.*  
**Naples**, Nápoli, *f.*  
**narrow**, angústó.  
**nation**, nazióne, *f.*  
**national**, nazióne.  
**nationalism**, nazionalísmo.  
**natural**, naturále.  
**naturally**, naturalménte.  
**nature**, natúra.  
**Neapolitan**, napoletáno.  
**nearly**, quási.  
**necessary**, necessáio.

**necessarily**, necessariaménte.  
**necessity**, necessità.  
**need**, bisógno.  
**neighboring**, finítimo.  
**never**, non . . . mái.  
**new**, nuóvo.  
**news**, notízia.  
**newspaper**, giornále, *m.*  
**next**, próssimo; seguén-te.  
**night**, nótte, *f.*; **last** —, iéri séra.  
**no**, non (*with verbs*); **no**.  
**noble**, nóbile.  
**nobody**, nessúno.  
**nor**, neppure.  
**north**, nord, *m.*  
**northern**, settentrionále.  
**not**, non (*with verbs*); **no**.  
**nothing**, nién-te; **are** — **else but**, áltro non sóno che.  
**notice**, *v.*, accórgersi.  
**noticeable**, notévole.  
**noun**, nóme, *m.*  
**novel**, románzo.  
**now**, óra, adéssó.  
**nowhere**, in nessún luógo.  
**number**, número.  
**numerous**, numeróso.

# O

**obligation**, óbbbligo.  
**observe**, *v.*, asserváre, rileváre.  
**observer**, asservatóre, *m.*  
**obtain**, *v.*, ottenére .  
**occupy**, *v.*, occupáre.  
**occur**, *v.*, avveníre, accadére.  
**o'clock**, óra.  
**of**, di.  
**offer**, *v.*, offríre.  
**office**, ufficíio.

official, ufficiale.  
 often, spésso.  
 old, véecchio, *adj.*; — **man**, véecchio.  
 on, su; *see pass.*  
 once, úna vólta; **at** —, súbito.  
 only, sólo, *adj.*; soltánto, *adv.*;  
*see § 172.*  
 open, *v.*, apríre.  
 opinion, opinióne, *f.*  
 opportunity, opportunità.  
 oppose, *v.*, oppórre.  
 opposition, opposizióne, *f.*  
 or, o.  
 orange, arância.  
 organism, organismo.  
 origin, orígine, *f.*  
 other, áltro.  
 otherwise, altrimentí.  
 out, fuóri.  
 over, su (*upon*); più (*di*).  
 overcoat, soprábito.  
 overcome, *v.*, vincere.  
 Ovid, Ovídio.  
 owing, — to, per.  
 own, of its —, súo próprio, *adj.*  
 own, *v.*, possedére.

## P

page, página.  
 pair, páio (§ 7.6).  
 palace, palázzo.  
 paper, cárta; giornále, *m.* (*news-paper*).  
 parlor, salóttó.  
 part, parte, *f.*  
 particular, particoláre.  
 partition, partizióne, *f.*  
 pass, — on, passár óltre.  
 patience, paziénza.

patient, ammaláto (-a).  
 patrician, patrízio.  
 pay, *v.*, pagáre.  
 peach, péscia.  
 peculiarity, peculiarità.  
 pen, pénna.  
 pencil, matíta.  
 people, pópolo.  
 perfectly, perfettaménte.  
 performance, rappresentazióne, *f.*  
 perhaps, fórse.  
 permission, perméssó.  
 perpetuated, perpetuáto.  
 person, persona.  
 persuade, *v.*, persuadére.  
 Petrarch, Petrárca.  
 philosopher, filósofo.  
 phonetic, fonético.  
 phonic, fónico.  
 pick, *v.*, cógliere.  
 pilgrimage, pellegrinággio.  
 pill, píllola.  
 place, pósto, luógo, *see take*.  
 planet, pianéta, *m.*  
 play, *v.*, giocáre.  
 please, *v.*, piacére (*a*).  
 pleasing, piacévole.  
 pleasure, piacére, *m.*  
 poem, poéma, *m.*  
 poet, poéta, *m.*  
 poetry, poesía.  
 pole, pólo.  
 policy, política.  
 political, político.  
 poor, póvero.  
 popular, popoláre.  
 population, popolazione, *f.*  
 populous, popolóso.  
 Portugal, Portogállo.  
 Portuguese, portoghése.  
 position, posizióne, *f.*

**positively**, positivamente; di positivo.

**possible**, possibile.

**post-office**, pósta.

**power**, fórza.

**powerful**, potente.

**praise**, lóde, *f*.

**precious**, prezioso.

**precision**, precisione, *f*.

**preconception**, preconcéto.

**prefer**, *v.*, preferire.

**preference**, preferénza.

**prepare**, *v.*, preparáre.

**preserve**, *v.*, conserváre, mantenere.

**president**, presidente, *m*.

**pretty**, bellíno.

**prevail**, *v.*, prevalére.

**prevalent**, prevalénte.

**price**, prezzo.

**primitive**, primitivo.

**prince**, príncipe.

**principal**, principále.

**probably**, probabilménte.

**problem**, probléma, *m*.

**process**, procésso.

**professor**, professóre, *m*.

**project**, progétto.

**promise**, proméssa.

**promptly**, prontaménte.

**pronoun**, pronóme, *m*.

**pronunciation**, pronúncia.

**proof**, próva.

**proper**, corréto.

**Propertius**, Propérzio.

**prose**, prósa.

**prosperity**, prosperità.

**prosperous**, prosperoso.

**Provençal**, provenzále, *m*.

**proverb**, provérbio.

**province**, província.

**public**, público.

**publish**, *v.*, pubblicáre.

**punish**, *v.*, puníre.

**punishment**, punizióne, *f*.

**purchase**, cómpera.

**purpose**, on —, appósta.

**put**, *v.*, métttere, porre.

## Q

**quality**, good —, prégio.

**quantitative**, quantitativo.

**question**, questióne, *f.*, dománda (*request*).

**quite**, interaménte, assái, *see* early.

## R

**race**, córsa; boat —, regáta.

**Raetia**, Rézia (*embracing the Grisons in Switzerland and part of Tyrol*).

**rain**, *v.*, pióvere.

**raise**, *v.*, lévare.

**rapidly**, rapidaménte.

**rare**, ráro.

**rate**, at any —, ad ógni módo.

**rather**, piuttósto.

**reach**, *v.*, arriváre, giúngere (*a*), raggiúngere.

**read**, *v.*, léggere.

**Reader**, libro di lettúra.

**reader**, lettore, *m*.

**ready**, pronto.

**reason**, ragióne, *f.*; motivo.

**reasonable**, ragionévole.

**receive**, *v.*, ricévere.

**recent**, próssimo.

**recently**, recenteménte.

**reception**, ricevímto.

**recommend**, *v.*, raccomandáre.

**record**, documentó.  
**reenforce**, *v.*, rincalzàre.  
**refer**, *v.*, — one's self, riferírsi.  
**reference**, with — to, per quánto concérne.  
**refinement**, affinaménto.  
**reflection**, rifllessióne, *f.*  
**refuse**, *v.*, rifiutàre.  
**regard**, with — to, quánto a.  
**region**, regióne, *f.*  
**regularity**, regolarità.  
**relation**, relazióne, *f.*  
**reliable**, attendíbile, sicúro.  
**remain**, *v.*, rimanére, restàre, mantenérsi.  
**remark**, osservazióne, *f.*  
**remark**, *v.*, notàre.  
**remedy**, rimédio.  
**remember**, *v.*, ricordàre, — sì.  
**remote**, remóto.  
**render**, *v.*, réndere.  
**repeat**, *v.*, ripétere.  
**repent**, *v.*, pentírsi.  
**represent**, *v.*, rappresentàre.  
**republic**, repúbblca.  
**reputation**, riputazióne, *f.*  
**resource**, risórsa.  
**respect**, riguárdo.  
**respect**, *v.*, rispettàre.  
**restrained**, disciplinàto.  
**result**, risultàto.  
**resume**, *v.*, ripréndere.  
**retrace**, *v.*, rintracciàre.  
**return**, *v.*, ritornàre.  
**reverse**, rovéscio.  
**review**, rivísta.  
**revival**, fioritúra.  
**ridiculous**, ridícolo.  
**right**, dirétto (§ 121).  
**rigorous**, rigoróso.  
**rise**, *v.*, sórgere.

**river**, fiúme, *m.*  
**road**, stráda.  
**roll-call**, appélló.  
**Roman**, románo.  
**Romance**, — languages, língue románze.  
**romanization**, romanizzazióne, *f.*  
**Rome**, Róma.  
**room**, cámera, stánza.  
**root**, *see* strike.  
**rose**, rósa.  
**round**, rotóndo.  
**rule**, régola (*of grammar*); domínio.  
**Rumania**, Ruménia.  
**Rumanian**, ruméno.  
**run**, *v.*, córrere.

## S

**s** (*pron.* ésse), *m.*  
**sacred**, sácro.  
**sacrifice**, sacrificio.  
**sake**, for the — of, per ragióni di.  
**Sallust**, Sallústio.  
**same**, stéssó (-a).  
**satisfactory**, so(d)disfacénte.  
**satisfy**, *v.*, so(d)disfàre.  
**save**, *v.*, salvàre.  
**say**, *v.*, díre; **that is to —**, cioè *or* vále a díre.  
**scarcity**, scarsézza.  
**scholar**, studióso, dótto.  
**school**, scuóla.  
**science**, sciénza.  
**scientific**, científico.  
**sea**, máre, *m.*  
**see**, *v.*, vedére.  
**seem**, *v.*, sembràre, parére.  
**sell**, *v.*, véndere.

- send, *v.*, mandáre; — for, far  
veníre.
- sentence, *f.*, fráse; período.
- sentiment, sentiménto.
- serve, *v.*, servíre.
- service, servízio.
- settler, colóno.
- several, parecchi (**-ie**).
- severe, sevéro.
- shade, sfumatúra.
- sharp, precíso (*precise*); nétto.
- sheer, puro.
- shine, *v.*, spléndere.
- short, bréve; in —, infíne.
- Sicilian, siciliáno.
- Sicily, Sicília.
- side, pártē, *f.*
- sight, vísta.
- sign, indízio, próva.
- silent, to be —, tacére.
- silk, séta (§ 213).
- simple, sémplíce.
- since (*in expressions of time*),  
sino da; (*causal*) siccóme.
- sincere, sincéro.
- sing, *v.*, cantáre.
- single, sólo.
- sister, sorélla.
- slight, leggéro.
- slow, lénto.
- small, píccolo.
- snow, *v.*, nevicáre.
- so, cosí; — that, talchè; *see far*  
and many.
- social, sociále.
- society, società.
- softness, mollézza.
- solar, soláre.
- solution, soluzióne, *f.*
- solved, risólto.
- some (§ 8.5; § 106).
- something, (§ 106).
- sometimes, talvólta.
- soon, présto; as — as, appéna  
che or tósto che.
- sorry, to be —, rincrés cere, di-  
spiacére (*see list of irregular*  
*verbs, 10*).
- sort, spécie, *f.*
- sound, suóno.
- sound, sicúro.
- south, sud, *m.*
- southern, meridionále.
- Spain, Spágna.
- Spanish, spagnólo.
- speak, *v.*, parláre.
- speech, discórso; linguággio.
- spelling, ortografia.
- spend, *v.*, spéndere.
- splendid, spléndido.
- splendor, splendóre, *m.*
- spontaneous, spontáneo.
- spread, *v.*, sténdere; sténdersi  
(*intr.*).
- standing, posizióne, *f.*
- state, státo.
- state, *v.*, espórre.
- still, ancóra, *adv.*
- storm, temporále, *m.*
- strange, stráno.
- street, stráda, vía.
- strengthen, *v.*, rafforzáre.
- strike, sciópero.
- strike, *v.*, — root, piantár ra-  
dice.
- striker, scioperánte, *m.*
- striking, spiccáto.
- study, stúdio.
- study, *v.*, studiáre.
- stuff, róba.
- style, stíle, *m.*
- style, *v.*, díre.

subject, *soggettó*.  
 subject, *sottoméssó*, *adj.*  
 substance, *sostánza*.  
 succeed, *riuscíre (a)*.  
 successive, *successívo*.  
 such, *tále (§ 112)*.  
 suddenly, *d'un súbito*.  
 suffix, *suffisso*.  
 sum, *sómma*.  
 summer, *estáte, f.*  
 sumptuous, *sontuóso*.  
 sun, *sóle, m.*  
 superficial, *superficiále*.  
 sure, *sicúro*.  
 surprise, *sorprésa*.  
 surprise, *v.*, *sorpréndere*.  
 surprising, to be —, *far mera-víglia*.  
 surrender, *v.*, *arréndersi*.  
 sustain, *v.*, *sostenére*.  
 sustained, *sorrétto*.  
 syllable, *síllaba*.  
 syncope, *síncope, f.*  
 syntactical, *sintáttico*.  
 syntax, *sintássi, f.*  
 system, *sistéma, m.*

## T

table, *távola*.  
 tailor, *sárto*.  
 take, *v.*, *préndere*; *accógliere*;  
 — *place*, *avveníre*; — *off*, *le-vársi (see § 71)*.  
 talent, *talénto*.  
 talk, *discórso*.  
 talk, *v.*, *parláre*.  
 taste, *gústó*.  
 teacher, *maéstro*.  
 telephone, *teléfono*.  
 tell, *v.*, *díre (a)*.

tendency, *tendénza*.  
 term, *condizióne, f.*  
 territory, *território*.  
 text, *tésto*.  
 than (§ 40).  
 thank, *v.*, *ringraziáre*.  
 that, *che, conj.*; *see Lessons XVI and XVII*.  
 theatre, *teátro*.  
 then, *allóra*; from — on, *d'allóra in pói*.  
 theory, *teoría*.  
 therefore, *quíndi*.  
 thing, *cósa*.  
 think, *v.*, *pensáre*; *crédere*.  
 thorough, *robústó*.  
 though, *benchè*.  
 thought, *pensiéro*.  
 through, *attravérso*; (*causal*) *per*.  
 thus, *così*.  
 till, *fino (a)*.  
 time, *témpo (§ 53, note)*; *vólta*.  
 tired, *stánco*; to get —, *stan-cársi*.  
 to, *a, ad.*  
 to-day, *óggi*.  
 together, *insiéme*.  
 tolerable, *relatívo*.  
 to-morrow, *dománi*.  
 tongue, *linguággio*.  
 to-night, *staséra*.  
 too, *tróppo*.  
 total, *totále*.  
 toward, *vérso*.  
 town, *città*.  
 trace, *tráccia*.  
 tradition, *tradizióne, f.*  
 train, *tréno*.  
 transfer, *v.*, *trasferíre*.  
 transform, *v.*, *trasformáre*.  
 transformation, *trasformazióne, f.*

transition, trapáso.

translate, *v.*, tradúrre.

transplant, *v.*, trapiantáre.

tree, álbero.

trial, procéso.

trip, viággio.

true, véro.

trunk, baúle, *m.*

truth, veritá.

try, *v.*, prováre, cercáre; — **hard**,  
sforzársi (*di*).

turn, in —, a *súa* (*this possessive*  
*may, of course, vary*) vólta.

Tuscan, toscáno.

Tuscany, Toscána.

twice, dúe vólte.

## U

uncle, zío.

under, sótto.

undergo, *v.*, soffríre.

understand, capíre, comprén-  
dere, inténdere.

unfortunate, sfortunáto.

unification, livellaménto.

uniform, unifórme, idéntico.

uniformity, uniformità.

unifying, livellatóre.

union, unióne, *f.*

unique, único.

unite, *v.*, uníre; — **with**, unírsi *a.*

unity, unità.

university, università.

unless, sálvo che.

until, fíno *a.*

upper, più eleváto.

use, úso.

useful, útile.

useless, inútile.

usually, di sólito, solitaménte.

## V

varied, vário.

variety, varietà.

various, divérso.

Varro, Varróne.

vast, vásto.

Venetian, veneziáno.

Venice, Venézia.

ventilated, ventiláto.

very, mólto, assái.

Vergil, Virgílio.

virtue, virtù, *f.*; in — of, in  
fórza *di*.

vocabulary, vocabolário, léssico.

vowel, vocále, *f.*

vulgar, volgáre.

## W

wait (*for*), *v.*, aspettáre.

walk, passeggiáta; take *a* —,  
fáre úna passeggiáta.

walk, *v.*, passeggiáre.

wall, múro.

want, *v.*, volére.

warm, cáldo.

warn, *v.*, avvertíre.

watch, orológio.

water, ácqua.

wave, ónda.

way, módo; by — of, per vía  
*di*.

weather, témpo.

weaken, *v.*, affievolíre; (*intr.*)  
affievolírsi.

week, settimána.

welcome, ben venúto (*ben is*  
*of course, invariable*).

well, bén(e); as — as, cóme  
púre.

**well bred**, civile.  
**when**, cuándo.  
**where**, dóve.  
**whereas**, méntre.  
**whereby**, per cúi.  
**wherever**, dovúnque.  
**while**, méntre.  
**white**, biáneo.  
**why**, perchè.  
**window**, finéstra.  
**wine**, víno.  
**wish**, *v.*, volére (*to be willing*);  
     desideráre (*to desire*).  
**with**, con.  
**withdraw**, *v.*, ritiráre; (*intr.*)  
     ritirársi.  
**without**, sénza.  
**witness**, testimónio.  
**wolf**, lupo.  
**wonderful**, meraviglióso.

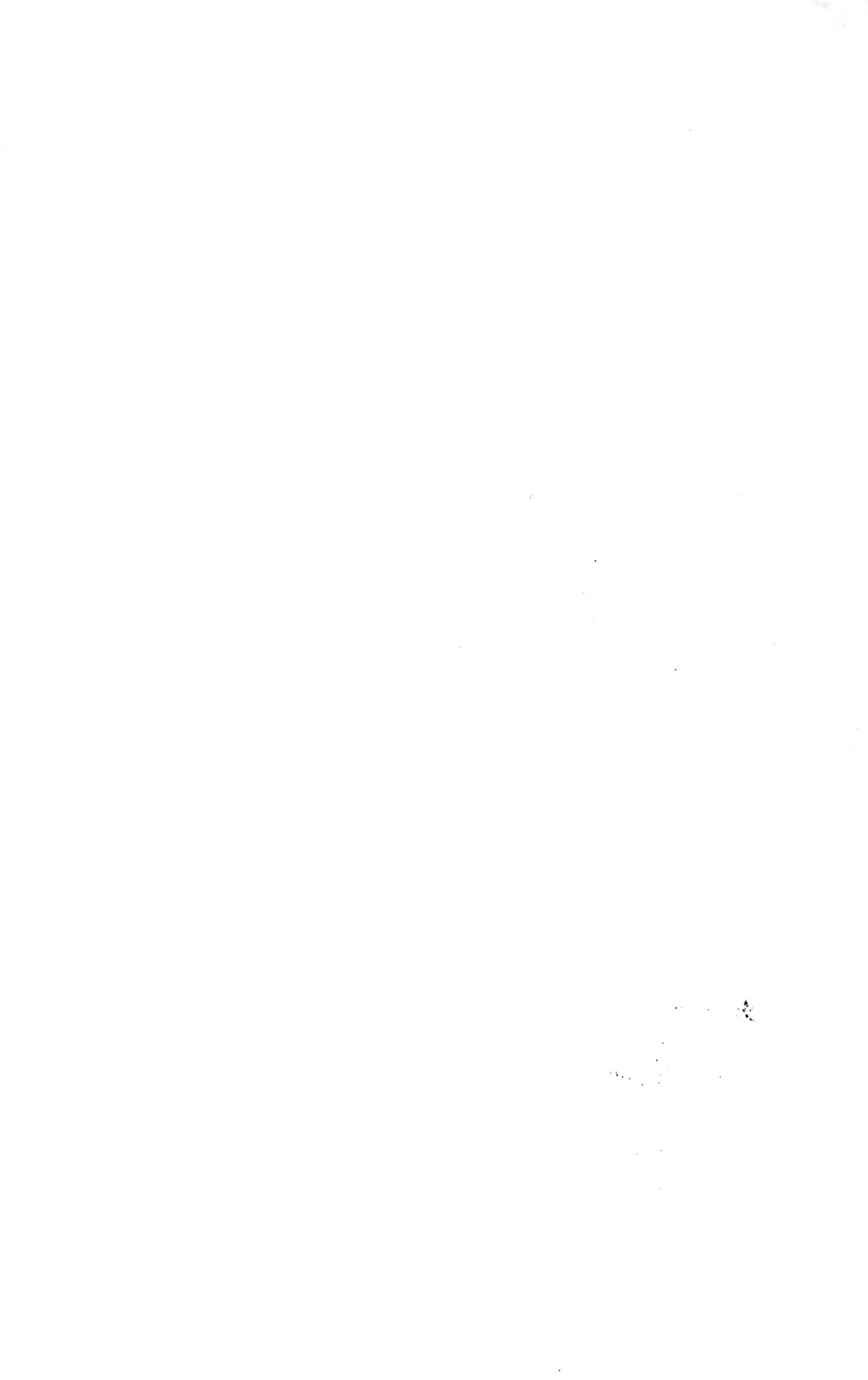
**wood**, légna (*firewood*).  
**word**, paróla.  
**work**, lavóro, ópera.  
**work**, *v.*, lavoráre.  
**world**, móndo.  
**worse**, peggióre; péggio, *adv.*  
**write**, *v.*, scrívere.  
**writer**, scrittóre (§ 15.4).  
**writings**, scrittúre, *f., pl.*

## Y

**year**, áнно.  
**yes**, sí.  
**yesterday**, iéri.  
**yet**, ancóra; (*nevertheless*) tut-  
     tavía.  
**yield**, *v.*, cédere.  
**young**, giòvane; — **man**, giòvane,  
     — **woman**, giòvane, ragázza









3 1197 00113 3518

DATE DUE

JUN 1 1980			
	NOV 25 2001		
APR 1 1980	DEC 04 2001		
APR	APR 15 2004		
NOV 2 1 78	NOV 18 2004		
OCT 15 1980	APR 14 2005		
NOV 20 1980	OCT 18 2005		
NOV 28 1980	AUG 28 2005		
DEC 13 1982	FEB 22 2008		
	JUN 13 2011		
JUL 7 1984			
AUG 7 1984			
JUL 02 1990			
JUN 21 1990			
JUL 11 3 2001			
AUG 12 2001			
AUG 14 2001			

